

430
L26L

3



HENRY FROWDE, M.A.
PUBLISHER TO THE UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD



LONDON, EDINBURGH, AND NEW YORK

259

Clarendon Press Series

LANGE'S NEW GERMAN METHOD

ADAPTED

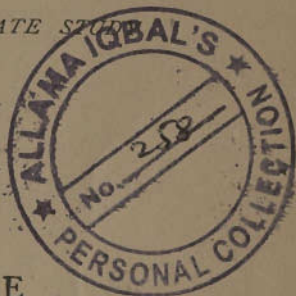
FOR CLASS TEACHING AND PRIVATE STUDY

IN FOUR VOLUMES

BY

HERMANN LANGE

LECTURER ON FRENCH AND GERMAN AT THE MANCHESTER TECHNICAL SCHOOL
AND LECTURER ON GERMAN AT THE MANCHESTER ATHENÆUM



VOLUME II

A GRAMMAR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE

Oxford

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

MDCCCXCIX

[All rights reserved]

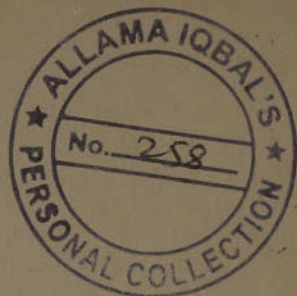
✓
16456/3884



~~43~~

430

226 L



PREFACE.

THE favourable reception accorded to the first volume of my German Method, of which another edition has just been called for, encourages me to hope that this Grammar will prove equally acceptable. It was originally written for 'The German Manual' (Vol. III), which is based upon the principle of studying the Grammar in connection with the Reading-Lessons and Conversations, partly by constant reference being made to the various paragraphs of the Accidence and Syntax, and partly by systematic study, carefully arranged with the view of giving precedence to what is most important, as pointed out at the commencement of each Lesson. In this separate form, however, the Grammar will be found adapted to the wants of those who wish to qualify themselves for the various examinations of this country, and is chiefly intended for the use of teachers who, whilst pursuing the study of German Literature with their pupils, wish to avail themselves of a Grammar in a concise form for reference and study, for which purpose much attention has been paid to the general and typographic arrangement of the book, as a glance at the various rules, examples, and tables will show.

Since the study of German is generally begun at an age when the ordinary terminology and the universal principles of Grammar ought to be known, I have thought it unnecessary to explain them, but I have been very careful to express myself in a simple and comprehensive manner, to give everything of practical importance, and to omit whatever is either unessential, or may be gained from the pupil's own power of observation in the course of his reading and translation. Special care has been bestowed upon the sections referring to the Conjugation of Verbs, the use of Tenses and Moods, the rendering of the English Gerund and the English Participles, as also upon the chapters on Construction, Word-building, the signification of the Auxiliary Verbs of Mood, and the Declension of Nouns, which latter subject has been treated on a somewhat new plan. Long experience has taught me that much time and trouble would be saved, if the leading principles relating

to this very important part of German Grammar could be kept entirely apart from all exceptional matter, and if a practical plan could be devised for impressing these principles firmly upon the learner's mind, so that they should form a nucleus, around which the exceptions might be grouped and arranged, the whole being calculated to lead gradually to a complete mastery of the subject. I soon saw that this was possible; an outline of the leading features was drawn up, a plan of working devised—and then I began to practise it with my pupils, thereby finding ample opportunities for testing and improving it. The leading principles I arrived at are now laid down in paragraphs 11 to 29 of the Grammar, whilst a detailed division of Nouns with respect to their declension is given in the Appendix, and it only remains to explain the mode of working I adopted, which, it is hoped, will be found as simple, as it has proved to be useful.

Paragraphs 11 to 19 are first carefully read, and, with the help of the table on page 14, explained. As practical illustrations to the rules I use the models given in paragraph 26, and after having read and explained one section, I begin to cross-question the pupils, till I have ascertained that they have thoroughly understood the matter. When I find that the rules of paragraphs 11 to 19 are mastered, I refer the learners to paragraphs 28 and 29, where the general rules for the formation of the Genitive Singular and Nominative Plural are drawn up, and try, by numerous examples and by frequent reference to the rules studied before, to give the pupils a fair idea of declining and classifying the nouns brought under their notice. From that time onward I require the learners to use their dictionaries in such a way, that every new noun occurring in their reading, etc., the gender, meaning, and declension of which they do not know, must be found, written out into a book with the definite article—so as to show the terminations required for the Genitive Singular and the Nominative Plural—and then committed to memory. In doing this, I expect the pupils to refer to the General Rules in paragraphs 28 and 29, which will greatly assist the memory, to find out the exceptions, which, being few, will be easily remembered, and in this way to master the declension of every noun occurring in their reading. In class I test their knowledge, ask for the rule referring to each particular case, refer them to the table of paragraph 20, and to the lists of exceptions in the Appendix, as occasion may offer, and have as many nouns declined as time will allow, or circumstances may require. Experience has taught me that very few lessons are required for making the pupil in this way familiar with the general rules and their

practical application, and that, when this stage is once reached, all becomes easy.

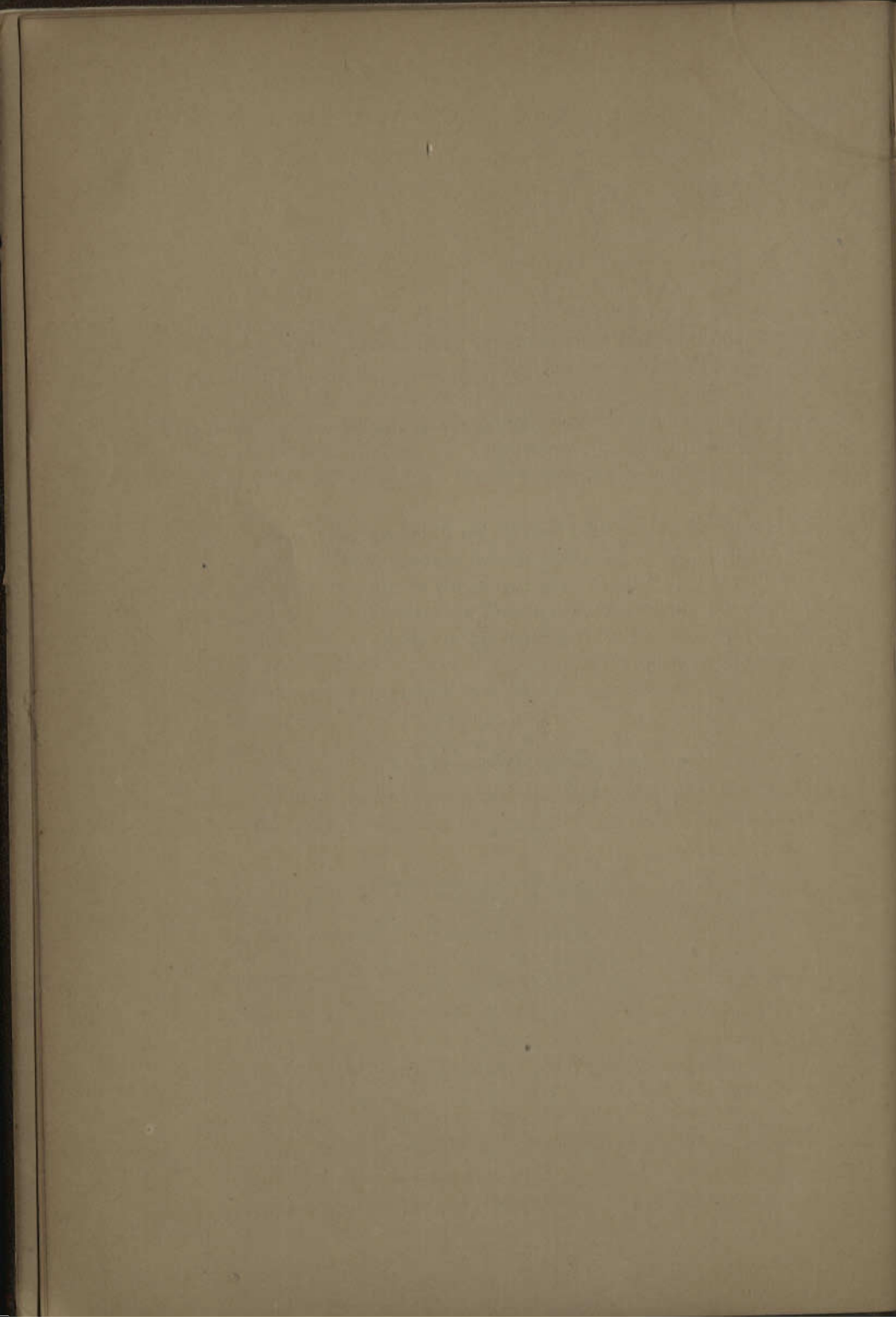
I may safely assert that, on the average, only ten nouns in a hundred will be found exceptions to the General Rules, and I am convinced that the mode of working I have just pointed out offers great advantages in teaching this subject. The separation of the General Rules from the detailed division of Nouns with respect to their declension, as given in the Appendix, will however in no way interfere with those teachers who pursue their own method, but, it is thought, will contribute much to a clear and unobstructed view of the whole matter.

All the examples given in illustration of the rules are intended to be committed to memory, a practice I cannot too strongly recommend. For the declension of compound nouns the student is referred to § 6 of the Appendix.

I have again to thank the Rev. Richard Pilcher, B.A., for the very kind and valuable help he has given me in the revision of the English text of this book, and I wish likewise to express my acknowledgments to the Rev. P. Quentzer, Minister of the German Protestant Church in Manchester, for his judicious criticisms, which have no doubt contributed greatly to the usefulness of the work.

HERMANN LANGE

PAINSLEY HOUSE, RUSHOLME, MANCHESTER,
November, 1876.



CONTENTS.

PART I. ACCIDENCE.

CHAPTER I.

The Alphabet and Pronunciation of the Letters.

PARAGRAPH	PAGE
1. The simple Vowels and Consonants	2
2. The compound and modified Vowels	4
3. The Diphthongs	4
4. The compound Consonants	4
5. The use of <i>ſ</i> , <i>ſh</i> , <i>ſs</i> , and <i>ff</i>	5

CHAPTER II.

The Article.

6. Declension of the Definite Article, and of other words declined like the Definite Article	6
7. Declension of the Indefinite Article, of the Indefinite Numeral <i>fein</i> , and of the Possessive Adjective-Pronouns	7

CHAPTER III.

The Substantive.

1. THE GENDERS.

8. Nouns of the Masculine Gender	8
9. Nouns of the Feminine Gender	9
10 ^a . Nouns of the Neuter Gender	10
10 ^b . The Gender of Compound Nouns, followed by a list of nouns with <i>two</i> genders, and a different meaning attached to each of them	10

2. THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

Observation	11
-----------------------	----

A. General Rules for the Declension of Nouns.		PAGE
11.	The Terminations of the Genitive Singular of both Declensions .	12
12.	The formation of the Dative and Accusative Singular of nouns belonging to the Ancient Declension	12
13.	The formation of the Plural of nouns belonging to the Ancient Declension	12
14.	The Modern Declension	12
15.	The Declension of Feminine Nouns	13
16.	The Declension of Neuter Nouns	13
17.	When to use <i>es</i> , and when <i>s</i> as the termination of the Genitive Singular of nouns belonging to the Ancient Declension .	13
18.	When to use <i>en</i> , and when <i>n</i> as the termination of the Genitive Singular of nouns belonging to the Modern Declension .	13
19.	Additional remarks on the Declension of Nouns	13
20.	A table of both Declensions	14
21.	Nouns belonging to Form I of the Ancient Declension . . .	15
22.	Nouns belonging to Form II of the Ancient Declension . .	15
23.	Nouns belonging to Form III of the Ancient Declension . .	15
24.	Nouns belonging to Form IV of the Ancient Declension . .	15
25.	Nouns belonging to the Modern Declension	15
26.	Models of the two Declensions	16
27.	The Declension of <i>der Herr</i> and <i>das Herz</i>	17
28.	General Rules for the formation of the Genitive Singular . .	18
29.	General Rules for the formation of the Nominative Plural . .	19
B. Declension of Non-Germanized Foreign Nouns.		
30.	Declension of nouns from the Latin	20
31.	Declension of nouns from modern languages	20
C. Declension of Proper Names.		
32.	Declension of names of nations, rivers, seas, and mountains .	20
33.	Declension of names of towns, villages, and countries . . .	21
34-36.	Declension of proper names of persons	21

CHAPTER IV.

The Adjective.

1. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

37.	The use of Adjectives	22
38.	The Adjective used in apposition, or as a predicate	22
39.	The Adjective used as an attribute	22
40.	First (strong or ancient) Form of Declension	23
41.	Second (weak or modern) Form of Declension	23

PARAGRAPH		PAGE
42.	Third (or mixed) Form of Declension	24
43.	Declension of Adjectives ending in <i>el, er, en</i>	24
44.	Declension of Adjectives used substantively	24
45.	Additional observations to the Declension of Adjectives	25

2. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

A. *The Comparative.*

46.	The Comparison of Equality	25
47, 48.	The Comparison of Superiority	25
49.	The Comparison of Inferiority	26
50.	The Comparison of Adjectives ending in <i>el, er, en</i>	26
51.	List of Adjectives which do not change the vowel in the comparative and superlative degrees	26
52.	Declension of Adjectives in the comparative and superlative degrees	27

B. *The Superlative of Comparison.*

53.	The formation of the Superlative of Comparison	27
54.	The Superlative used predicatively	27

C. *The Superlative of Eminence.*

55.	Words used to express the Superlative of Eminence	27
56.	Irregular and defective forms of comparison	28

CHAPTER V.

The Numeral.

A. *The Cardinal Numerals.*

57.	List of Cardinal Numerals	29
58.	The numeral <i>ein</i> , or <i>ein, eine, ein</i>	29
59.	Declension of <i>zwei</i> and <i>drei</i>	29
60.	Declension of other numerals	30

B. *The Ordinal Numerals.*

61.	List of Ordinal Numerals	30
-----	------------------------------------	----

C. *The Derivative Numerals.*

62.	List of Derivative Numerals	30
-----	---------------------------------------	----

D. *The Indefinite Numerals.*

63.	Denoting Number	31
64.	Denoting Quantity	31
65.	Denoting both Number and Quantity	32

CHAPTER VI.

The Pronoun.

1. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

PARAGRAPH		PAGE
66.	List and Declension of Personal Pronouns	34
67.	Reflective and Reciprocal Pronouns	35

2. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

68.	List and Declension of Conjunctive and Disjunctive Possessive Pronouns	35
69.	Declension of <i>unser</i> and <i>euer</i>	36

3. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

70, 71.	List and Declension of Conjunctive and Absolute Demonstrative Pronouns	36
---------	--	----

4. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

72.	List and Declension of Relative Pronouns	38
-----	--	----

5. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

73.	List and Declension of Interrogative Pronouns	39
-----	---	----

6. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

74.	List and Declension of Indefinite Pronouns	39
-----	--	----

CHAPTER VII.

The Verb.

75.	Preliminary remarks	41
-----	-------------------------------	----

1. AUXILIARY VERBS OF TENSES.

76.	The Auxiliary <i>sein</i>	43
77.	The Auxiliary <i>werden</i>	44
78.	The Auxiliary <i>haben</i>	46

2. THE CONJUGATION OF THE WEAK VERB.

(The modern form of conjugation.)

79.	The Formation of the Perfect and Pluperfect	47
80.	The Imperative	48
81, 82.	Model of a Transitive Verb conjugated with <i>haben</i>	49
83.	Model of an Intransitive Verb conjugated with <i>sein</i>	51
84.	Verbs ending in <i>eln</i> and <i>ern</i>	53

3. REFLECTIVE VERBS.

PARAGRAPH		PAGE
85.	Model for the conjugation of a Reflective Verb	53
86.	Verbs with a reflective meaning	54

4. AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD.

87.	Peculiarities of the Auxiliary Verbs of Mood	55
88.	The verb <i>wollen</i>	55
89.	The verb <i>sollen</i>	56
90.	The verb <i>müssen</i>	56
91.	The verb <i>können</i>	56
92.	The verb <i>mögen</i>	57
93.	The verb <i>dürfen</i>	57
94.	The verb <i>lassen</i>	58

5. THE CONJUGATION OF STRONG AND IRREGULAR VERBS.

95.	Characteristics of Strong Verbs	58
96.	The Imperative of Strong Verbs	58
97.	Models for conjugating Strong Verbs	58
98.	Irregular Verbs	59
99.	Table for the conjugation of Strong and Irregular Verbs	60

6. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

100.	General observations	70
101.	Conjugation of an Impersonal Verb	70
102.	Conjugation of the verb <i>es giebt</i> , there is, there are	70
103.	<i>Es ist</i> is used in speaking of time and weather	71

7. COMPOUND VERBS.

104.	Introductory observations	71
105.	Simple Inseparable Prefixes	71
106.	Compound Inseparable Prefixes	73
107.	Simple Separable Prefixes	73
108.	Conjugation of a Verb with a Simple Separable Prefix	74
109.	List of Simple Separable Prefixes with verbs	75
110.	List of Compound Separable Prefixes with verbs	76
111.	Compound Separable Verbs formerly written in the Infinitive as two separate words	78
112.	Prefixes both Separable and Inseparable	78

CHAPTER VIII.

The Adverb.

113.	Classification of Adverbs	79
114.	Adjectives used as Adverbs without any change	79

PARAGRAPH		PAGE
115.	Formation of Adverbs from other words by the terminations ḥa ft and li ḥ	79
116.	The comparison of Adverbs	79
117.	Irregular forms of comparison	80

CHAPTER IX.

The Preposition.

118.	Classification of Prepositions	81
119.	Prepositions governing the Genitive	81
120.	Prepositions governing the Dative	82
121.	Prepositions governing the Accusative	82
122.	Prepositions governing the Dative or Accusative	82

CHAPTER X.

The Conjunction.

123.	Co-ordinative Conjunctions	84
124.	Subordinative, Relative, and Adverbial Conjunctions	84

CHAPTER XI.

The Interjection.

125.	Classification of Interjections	86
------	---	----

PART II. SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

The Use of the Articles.

126.	The Definite Article used when the English use no article	89
127.	The Article not repeated before nouns of the same number and gender	90
128.	The Indefinite Article before proper names used as common names	90
129.	The Definite Article contracted with prepositions	90

CHAPTER II.

The Government of Adjectives.

130.	Adjectives governing the Genitive	91
131.	Adjectives governing the Dative	92
132.	Participles used adjectively and governing the Dative	94

CHAPTER III.

The Verb.

I. AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH THE SUBJECT.

PARAGRAPH		PAGE
133-136.	Agreement with the subject in number and person	95

II. THE USE OF THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

137-140.	The use of the Present	96
141.	The use of the Imperfect	97
142.	The use of the Perfect	97
143.	The use of the Pluperfect	97
144-146.	The use of the First and Second Future	98

III. THE USE OF THE MOODS.

147.	The Indicative Mood	98
148-150.	The Subjunctive Mood	99
151.	The Conditional Mood	104
152.	The Imperative Mood	106
153.	The Infinitive Mood, the use of the Supine, and the translation of the English Gerund	106
154.	The Present Participle, and the translation of the English Participle in <i>-ing</i>	113
155.	The Past Participle, and the translation of the English Perfect Participle, commonly called Past Participle	116
156.	The formation of Nouns from Infinitives and Present Participles	119

IV. THE GOVERNMENT OF THE VERB.

157.	Verbs requiring the predicate in the Nominative	119
158.	Verbs requiring the predicate in the Nominative when used passively	120
159.	Verbs requiring the preposition <i>ἔν</i> contracted with the article into <i>ἐν</i>	120
160.	Verbs governing the Dative of the Person or of the thing	120
161.	Verbs governing the Genitive	122

APPENDIX.

I. The Declension of Nouns.

1.	Form I of the Ancient Declension	127
2.	Form II of the Ancient Declension	130
3.	Form III of the Ancient Declension	132
4.	Form IV of the Ancient Declension	133
5.	The Modern Declension	135

PARAGRAPH		PAGE
6.	The Declension of Compound Nouns	137
7.	The Vocative	138
8.	The Declension of Nouns with a double vowel	138
9.	The Plural of Mann in compounds	138
10.	Nouns with two plural forms, each having a different meaning	138
11.	Nouns only used in the Plural	139
12.	Nouns only used in the Singular	139
13.	Nouns having two forms in the Nominative Singular	140

II. Essentials of Construction.

14-25.	Principal and co-ordinate clauses	141
26-28.	Inverted construction	143
29-37.	Subordinate clauses	144

III. Essentials of Word-Building.

I. OF NOUNS.

38.	Classification of Nouns	146
39.	Primitive Nouns	146
40.	Classification of Derivative Nouns	147
41.	Primary Derivative Nouns	147
42-62.	Signification of Prefixes and Suffixes used for the formation of Secondary Derivative Nouns	148
63.	Compound Nouns	154

II. OF ADJECTIVES.

64.	Classification of Adjectives	155
65.	Signification of Prefixes for the formation of Derivative Adjectives	155
66.	Signification of Suffixes for the formation of Derivative Adjectives	155
67.	Compound Adjectives	157

IV. The Use and Signification of the Auxiliary Verbs of Mood.

68.	The Verb wollen	157
69.	The Verb sollen	159
70.	The Verb müssen	160
71.	The Verb können	161
72.	The Verb mögen	162
73.	The Verb dürfen	163
74.	The Verb lassen	164

V. On Punctuation.

75.	The comma separates principal clauses from subordinate clauses	165
76.	The use of the comma before the conjunction oder	166
77.	The use of the comma before the conjunction und	166
78.	The use of the comma before elliptic Infinitive clauses	167
79.	The use of the comma before the conjunctions als and wie	168

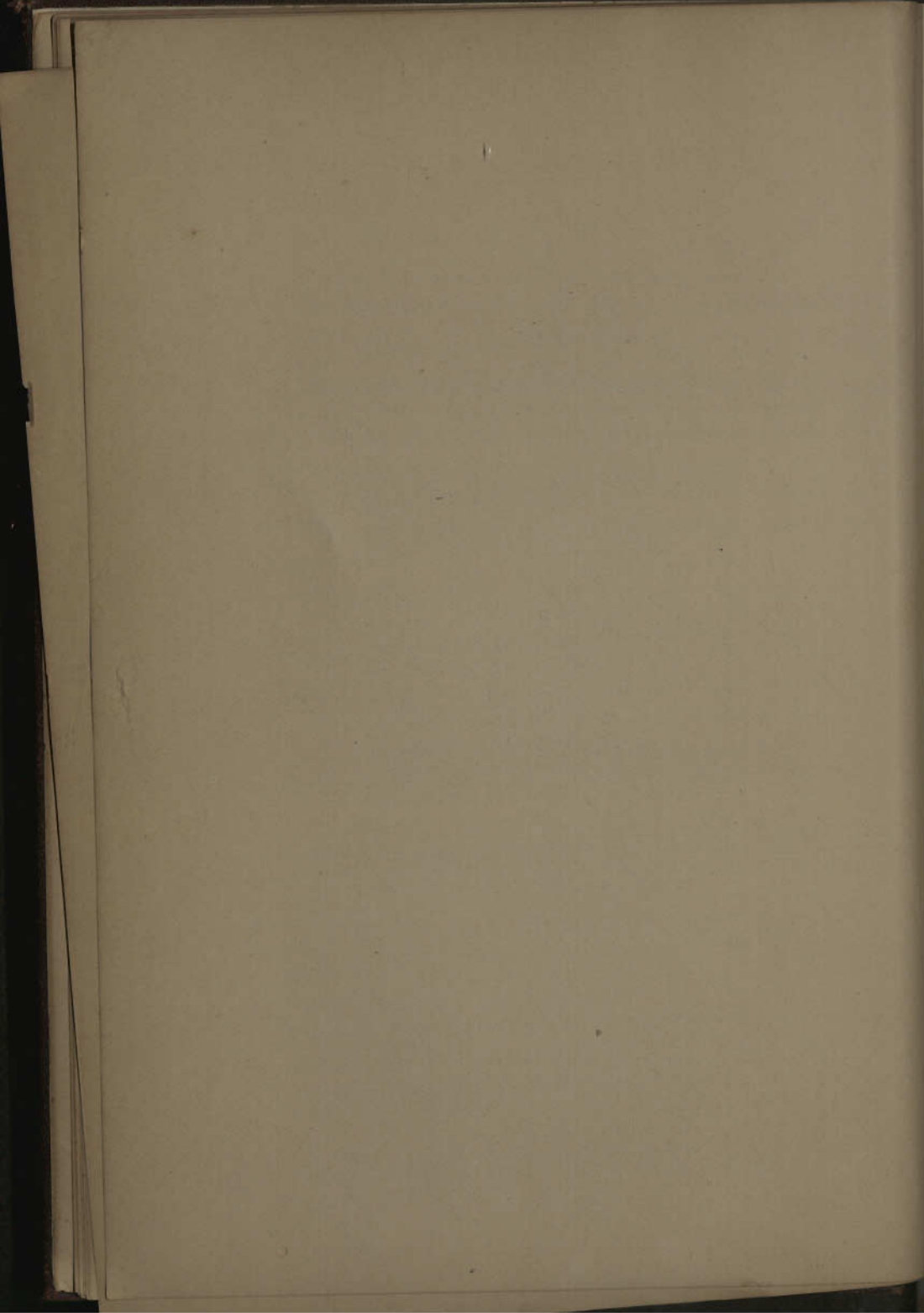
Specimens
of
German Handwriting.

Capital Letters.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H,
I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P,
Q, R, S, T, U, V, W,
X, Y, Z.
X, Y, Z.

Small Letters.

a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j,
k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s,
t, u, v, w, x, y, z.
s, t, u, v, w, x, y, z.



Compound Consonants.

pf, pt, ff, ß, pff, pfe, pft, ff, sz.
ch, ck, ss, sz, sch, sp, st, th, tz.

Arm, Linn, Linnchen,
Sant, fct, Trünn, Gold,
Ginn, Tufel, Jufel, Rinn,
Linn, Mann, Kieß, Oufel,
ffel, Ginn, Kaba, Vuf,
Winn, Tunn, Uff, Kaba,
Malt, Kunn, Juff, Zuff.

In der Jünn Prob
nach Jünn.
Wonnstünn fct
Gold im Winn.
Fluß bringt Lott,
Fußst Kott.

Erbildung

Ein Mann setzt die Gn.,
 wofür, oft mit sich selbst
 zu kämpfen. Einem Mann
 können setzen und bewahrt.

Warum kämpfen Sie so
 oft mit sich selbst? Freya
 ist ein nicht Tugend. —
 Ich will ich Ihnen sagen,
 was die Antwort.

Es ist mir ein ganz
 neues wackelndes
 Manuskript setzen können;
 im zweiten mir ein
 ganz mit einem wackelnd
 signen Manuskript können. —

Wissen ist Macht.

Unsere Gevater.

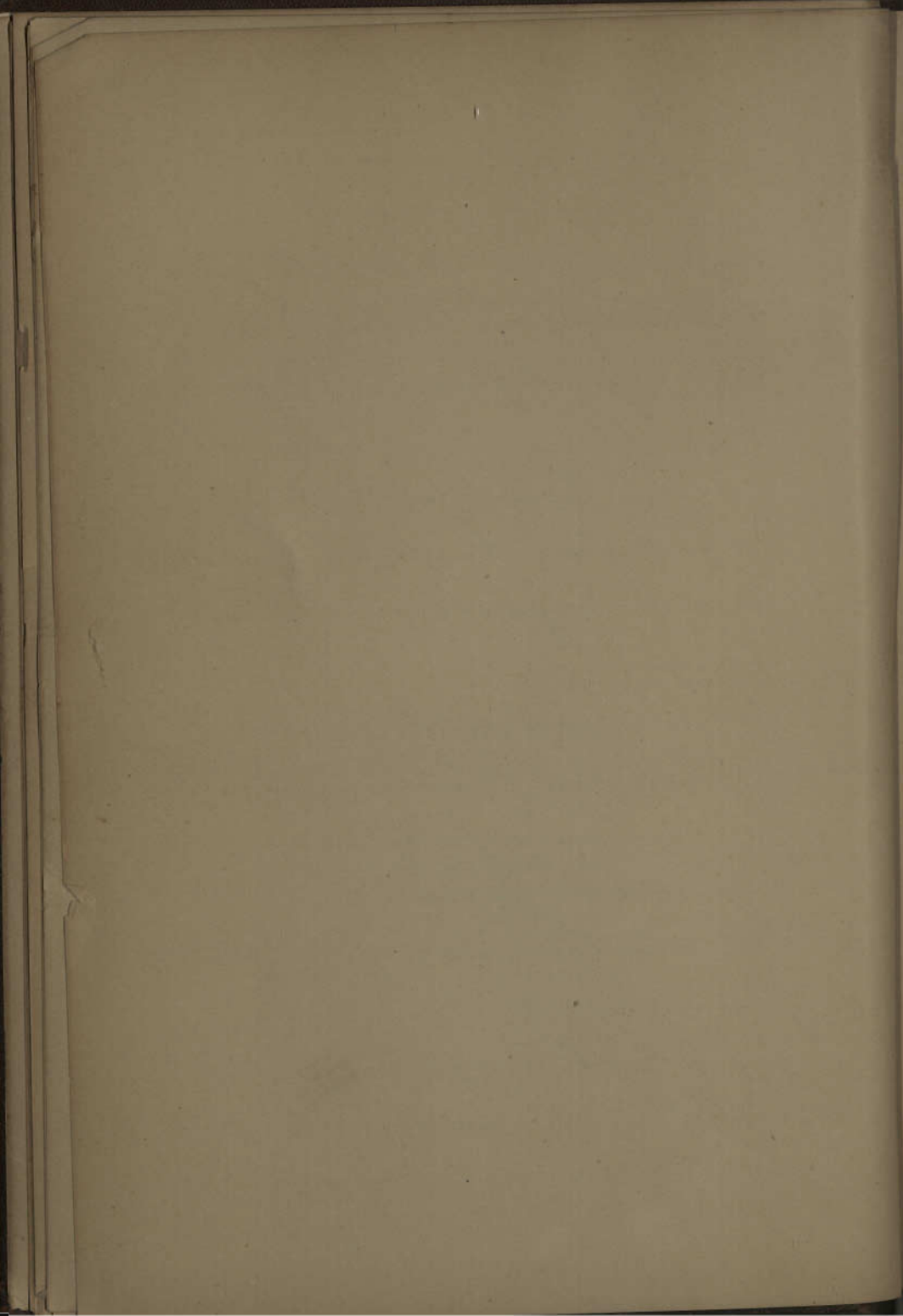
Laß Niemand, werlich lebt, mit
 Unstillschuld' Gevater sich
 Zu dem zu küssen Muthschreit
 weyn!

Ein ist - damit ist's kurz,
 mit seiner Kraft und feyn-
 Anmuthigfalt'ger Art,
 laß

Zu immer mehr und mehr
 Unstillschuld' Muthschreit
 Ist, was wir selbst in jenen
 großen Jahren,
 Zu Tugend und Fortschritt,
 weyn:

Gesundheit, ungenüßlich und
 nur sich selber gleich.

Recht.



PART I.

A C C I D E N C E.

VOL. II.

B

CHAPTER I. THE ALPHABET AND PRONUNCIATION OF THE LETTERS.

Simple Vowels and Consonants.

§ 1.

GERMAN LETTERS.	ENGLISH LETTERS.	NAME.	PRONOUNCED LIKE	IN	EXAMPLES.	GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.
A, a	A, a	Ah	a	father	Water, That	Beginning a syllable.
B, b	B, b	Bay	b	bee	Biene, beginnen	Ending a syllable.
C, c	C, c	Tsay	p } k }	sleep king	Dieb, abgeben, ab	Before a, o, u, au, and consonants.
D, d	D, d	Day	ts d	boots deep	Gato, Gaudius Giecro Dauf	Before other vowels. Beginning a syllable.
E, e	E, e	Eh	more like t }	cat late	Gund, Gaud Leben, geben	Ending a syllable. When long.
F, f	F, f	Ef	a e	set find	Felb, Dieftel, Knabe	When short.
G, g	G, g	Gay	f g	God	Rinden, Brief	Beginning a syllable.
			more like ch }	Scotch loch	Gott, Gabe	Ending a syllable.
			a French g }	French genie	Sag, Rag	Beginning a syllable.
			h	have	Gente Gaten, Mähe, Staub, } Uhr	Ending a syllable. Must be taught by a master's voice.
H, h	H, h	Hah				In words coming from the French. Less strong between two vowels; no sound at the end and before consonants, when it indicates that the preceding vowel is long.
I, i	I, i	Ee	ee i	deer bit	Wir, dir Bis, Tisch	When long. (See the note below.) When short.

S, s	J, j	Yot	y	year	Jahy, ja
ss, f	K, k	Kah	k	kind	Gamm
ss, t	L, l	El	l	lamb	Gamm
ss, m	M, m	Em	m	man	Mann
ss, n	N, n	En	n	name	Name
ss, o	O, o	Oh	o	bone	Groß
			o	lot	Gott
ss, p	P, p	Pay	p	paper	Papier
ss, q	Q, q	Koo	qu	Queen	Quelle, Qual
ss, r	R, r	Airr	r	ring	Rind, Rolle
ss, s	S, s	Ess	s	so	Spiel, Sans
			z	zeal	Sohn, Nase, Seil
ss, t	T, t	Tay	t	till	Tiger, Tritt
ss, u	U, u	Oo	ts	boots	Portion, Section
ss, v	V, v	Fow	oo	boot	Buch, Fuß
			oo	book	Ruß, Stuß
ss, w	W, w	Vay	f	fowl	Roll, Vogel
ss, x	X, x	Ilks	v	slave	Esclave, Glavier
ss, y	Y, y	Ypsilon	v	vain	Rolf, will
			ks	books	Art, Fege
			ee	bee	Chrup
			French u	tu	Champton
ss, z	Z, z	Tset	ts	boots	Sahl, Zehn

When long.
When short.

Always followed by u.

But more rolling and forcible than *r* in English.

Sharp before a consonant, and at the end of a syllable (§ 5).

Soft before a vowel or diphthong, at the beginning of a syllable (§ 5).

Before -ion in words from the Latin.

When long.

When short.

In words originally German.

In words derived from Latin and French.

Must be taught by a master's voice.

Seldom or never used in words originally German.

In words from the Greek.

NOTE.—Every letter is pronounced, or at least influences the pronunciation of another letter in some way. Often the vowel *i* is lengthened by *e* (mute) being placed after it, as in—*siene, tier, sieb.* *ai, a, e, o, i, e, o,* *ii, u, y, v, are vowels; all other letters of the preceding list are consonants.*

The Compound or Modified Vowels.

§ 2.

GERMAN LETTERS.	ENGLISH LETTERS.	NAME.	PRONOUNCED LIKE	IN	EXAMPLES.	GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.
Ä, Ae, ä		A	ay	day	Hände, lästig	No corresponding sound in English, and the pronunciation of these letters must be taught by a master's voice.
Ö, Oe, ö			French eu	peu	Öfen, Dörfer	
Ü, Ue, ü			French u	fu	Brüste, über	

The Diphthongs.

		I	y	sky	Mat, Ratier	Occurs only in a few proper names.
		Ou	ou	house	Haus, Maus	
		Oi	oi	cloister	Häuser, Mäuse	
		I	i	fire	klein, Reind	
		Oi	oi	loiter	Guch, Zeug	
		Oi	oi	loiter	Boisgenburg	

Compound Consonants.

	Ch	Tsay-hah	Scotch loch	loch, Nacht	In the middle, or the end of a word; must be taught by a master's voice. Before a, o, u and consonants at the beginning of words originally Greek; but before e and i it retains its original sound; as— <i>Chénic</i> . In words derived from the French.
Ch, ch			king	Eher, Christ	
			sh	Chof, Chaussee	

§ 4.

ck	king	Buch, Buchs, wachsen	Before s in pure German words, when ch and i belong to the same root-syllable
ck	stick	Stoß	In words of Greek origin.
ph	philosopher	Philosoph	(See § 5.)
sh	sheep	Schaf, Tisch	(See § 5.)
s-s	tas-sel	Müssen, lassen	
sharp s	soldier	Weiß, grüßen	
tz	Fitz	Witz	
st	rest	Laß, lassen	
St, st		Stadt	

§ 5.

The use of s, i, h, and n.

Write **s** (sharp) at the end of a syllable: **Gans, Glas, Haus.**

Write **i** (soft) at the beginning of a syllable, before vowels or diphthongs: **Mose, Fuß, lesen, siehst.** Also in cases where an **e** is dropped after **i**, and an apostrophe put instead (see § 75, *F*): **raht, sollte** (from **raien** and **sofen**); and lastly at the beginning of a syllable before consonants, when it is pronounced like the sharp **s** in soldier: **sprechen, spanisch, gesprochen, spanisch.**

Write **n** (sounded like a simple **s** in so) —

(a) Always after a long vowel, either simple or double: **Mahn, Mähne, außen, gießen, Preuss.**

(b) At the end of a word after a short vowel: **Stuhl, Fuß, nach, schön, indeh, Dahn.**

(c) Before **t** at the end of words, the **s**-sound having originated from **n**: **hast, fußt, mißt, mußte** (from **hassen, fassen, müssen, müssen**).

Write **n** (sounded like a double **s** in possible) between two vowels, the first of which is short and at the same time accented: **lassen, essen, müssen, gekloffen, lassen, müssen.**

CHAPTER II.

THE ARTICLES (*Die Geschlechtswörter*).

§ 6.

Declension of the Definite Article.

(*Der bestimmte Artikel*.)

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL	English.
	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	for all Genders.	
Nominative.	der,	die,	das,	die,	the.
Genitive.	des,	der,	des,	der,	of the.
Dative.	dem,	der,	dem,	den,	to the.
Accusative.	den,	die,	das,	die,	the.

The following words (and some others with the terminations *er, e, es*) are declined like the *definite article*. (Nom. and Acc. Plural in *e*).

dieser, diese, dieses, this.	mancher, manche, manches, many, many a.
jener, jene, jenes, that.	jeder, jede, jedes, every.
solcher, solche, solches, such.	welcher, welche, welches, which.
aller, alle, alles, all.	einiger, einige, einiges, some.

Example.

	SINGULAR.			English.	PLURAL	English.
	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.		for all Genders.	
Nom.	dieser,	diese,	dieses,	this;	diese,	these.
Gen.	dieses,	dieser,	dieses,	of this;	dieser,	of these.
Dat.	diesem,	dieser,	diesem,	to this;	diesem,	to these.
Acc.	diesen,	diese,	dieses,	this;	diese,	these.

It is important to observe that all the preceding words have a distinct termination for the nominative singular of the three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter, and that, by means of this distinct termination, they possess, like the definite article, the power of pointing out the gender of the noun before which they are placed.

§ 7. Declension of the Indefinite Article,

(Der unbestimmte Artikel,)

And of the Indefinite Numeral *fein*.(a) The Declension of *ein, eine, ein, a, or an*.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	English.
Nom.	ein,	eine,	ein,	a, or an.
Gen.	eines,	einer,	eines,	of a, or of an.
Dat.	einem,	einer,	einem,	to a, or to an.
Acc.	einen,	eine,	ein,	a, or an.

(b) The Declension of the Indefinite Numeral *fein, keine, kein*,
no, not any, none.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL	English.
	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	for all Genders.	
Nom.	fein,	keine,	kein,	keine,	no.
Gen.	keines,	keiner,	keines,	keiner,	of no.
Dat.	keinem,	keiner,	keinem,	keinen,	to no.
Acc.	keinen,	keine,	kein,	keine,	no.

All Possessive Adjective-Pronouns (see § 68) are declined

In the Singular like . . . *ein, eine, ein*;*In the Plural* like . . . *fein*.

The indefinite article *ein, eine, ein*, the indefinite numeral *fein, keine, kein*, and the possessive adjective-pronouns (as *mein, meine, mein*; *ihr, ihre, ihr*, etc.) have no distinctive termination for the nominative singular of the masculine and neuter genders, since the masculine and neuter forms are alike. Therefore the feminine form alone has the power of indicating the gender of the noun before which it is placed.

CHAPTER III.

THE SUBSTANTIVE (*Das Hauptwort*).

1. THE GENDERS

There are three Genders, as in English: Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter; but in German several names of living beings are of the neuter gender, whilst the names of some things are masculine, some feminine, some neuter; hence in German, **gender**, as referring to living beings and things, **has but little to do with sex**.

SOME GENERAL RULES FOR THE GENDERS OF NOUNS.

§ 8. Of the Masculine Gender are:

1. Names of **male persons and male animals**; as—

der Graf, count.	der Held, hero.
der Greis, old man.	der Knabe, boy.
der Löwe, lion.	der Wolf, wolf.
2. Names of **months, days, seasons, and winds**; as—

der Januar, January.	der Frühling, spring.
der November, November.	(but das Frühjahr, spring.)
der Montag, Monday.	der Winter, winter.
der Sonnabend, Saturday.	der Ostwind, east wind.
der Sommer, summer.	der Nordwind, north wind.
3. Names of **stones**; as—

der Diamant, diamond.	der Granit, granite.
der Kiesel, flint.	der Smaragd, emerald.
der Rubin, ruby.	der Amethyst, amethyst.

4. Words ending in **all, ing, ling, and m**; as—

der Stall, stable.

der Findling, foundling.

der Ring, ring.

der Helm, helmet.

der Jüngling, young man.

der Dom, dome, cathedral.

Exceptions.—das Metall, metal; das Ding, thing; das Messing, brass.

§ 9.

Of the Feminine Gender are :

1. **Female appellations**, nouns of more than one syllable ending in **ei, heit, feit, schaft, ung, ath, uth**, and monosyllables in **ucht**; as—

die Tochter, daughter.

die Freundschaft, friendship.

die Frau, woman.

die Hoffnung, hope.

die Verrätherei, treachery.

die Heimath, native land.

die Freiheit, freedom.

die Wuth, rage, fury.

die Freundlichkeit, friendliness.

die Sucht, passion.

Exceptions.—das Weib, wife; das Frauenzimmer, a female person; das Weisheit, seal; der Wermuth, wormwood; der Wismuth, bismuth; das Geschrei, clamour.2. Names of **inanimate objects** ending in **e**; as—

die Laube, bower.

die Buche, beech.

die Krone, crown.

die Birne, pear.

die Sonne, sun.

die Tulpe, tulip.

die Stube, room.

die Rose, rose.

3. To denote the **female sex** the affix **in** (Plural **innen**) is added to many masculine nouns, when the sex is not distinguished by special words, such as der Sohn, son; die Tochter, daughter. The vowel, then, is frequently modified, and the **final e** is always **dropped**; as—

der Löwe, lion.

die Löwin, lioness.

der Engländer, Englishman.

die Engländerin, English lady.

der Schäfer, shepherd.

die Schäferin, shepherdess.

der König, king.

die Königin, queen.

der Doctor, doctor.

die Doctorin, the doctor's wife.

It is the custom in Germany to give the wife the title of her husband. So we say in addressing a doctor, Herr Doctor, and in addressing the wife of a doctor, Frau Doctorin, or Frau Doctor, Frau Professor, etc.

§ 10 a. Of the Neuter Gender are:

1. Most names of metals, places, and countries; as—

das Kupfer, copper.

das große London, great London.

das schöne Spanien, beautiful Spain.

das reiche Hamburg, rich Hamburg.

2. Most Collective Nouns with the prefix *Ge*; as—

das Gewölk, clouds; das Gebirge, the range of mountains.

3. All Diminutives ending in *chen* and *lein*; as—

das Söhnchen, little son.

das Töchterlein, little daughter.

das Mädchen, girl.

das Fräulein, young lady.

4. Nouns ending in *thum*; as—

das Heiligtum, sanctuary.

5. Words and letters used substantively; as—

das Schlafen, sleeping; das Wenn, the word 'when'; das A, das B.

§ 10 b. NOTE.—Compound Nouns take the gender of their last component; as—der Hausvater, housefather; das Schulzimmer, schoolroom; from der Vater and das Zimmer. Compounds with *Muth* (*m*) are some masculine, some feminine; as—der Heldenmuth, heroism; die Demuth, humility; die Unmuth, grace; der Kleinmuth, discouragement.

The following words have two genders, and a different meaning attached to each of them —

I.

der Band, the volume of a book.

das Band, the ribbon, band, union.

der Bauer, the peasant.

das Bauer, the bird cage.

der Bulle, bull (of cattle).

die Bulle, a papal document.

der Bund, the covenant.

das Bund, the bundle, sheaf.

der Chor, the chorus.

das Chor, the choir, place for singers.

der Erbe, the heir.

das Erbe, the inheritance.

die Erkenntniß, knowledge.

das Erkenntniß, the verdict.

der Gehalt, the contents.

das Gehalt, the salary.

der Geißel, the hostage.

die Geißel, scourge.

der Harz, the Harz mountains.

das Harz, resin.

II.

der Heide, the pagan.	die Heide, the heath.
der Hut, the hat.	die Hut, heed, guard.
der Kiefer, the jaw.	die Kiefer, the pine, a kind of fir.
der Kunde, the customer.	die Kunde, knowledge, intelligence.
der Leiter, the guide.	die Leiter, the ladder.
der Lohn, the reward.	das Lohn, wages.
die Mandel, the almond.	das Mandel, number of 15.
der Mangel, want.	die Mangel, the mangle.
die Mark, province, mark.	das Mark, marrow.
der Marsch, the march.	die Marsch, the marsh.
der Mensch, man.	das Mensch, wench.
der Reis, rice.	das Reis, the twig, sprig.
der Schild, the shield.	das Schild, the sign-board.
der See, the lake.	die See, the sea.
der Theil, part of a whole.	das Theil, share, portion.
der Thor, the fool.	das Thor, the gate.
der Verdienst, gain, earnings.	das Verdienst, merit.

2. THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

Observation.—German Grammars for the use of English people differ greatly with respect to the number of Declension, but those used in Germany divide all nouns into *two great classes*:

- The Ancient or Strong Declension, and
The Modern or Weak Declension.

The German method is adopted in this course. The following pages contain, in a concise form, the *General Rules* only. The Appendix contains a **detailed division of Nouns** with respect to their declension, it contains also the *Exceptions* to the *General Rules*, and is chiefly for reference and systematic study*.

* The Author begs to refer to the Preface of his 'Grammar,' where he has taken the opportunity of speaking about the principles that led him to treat this very important part of German Grammar in this way, and of suggesting what he believes to be the best method of studying and mastering the declensions of German nouns.

A. GENERAL RULES FOR THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

§ 11. The inflection of the Genitive Singular may be considered the distinguishing mark of both declensions.

The inflection of the Genitive Singular is—

es or *s* for nouns belonging to the Ancient or Strong Declension, and
en or *n* for nouns belonging to the Modern or Weak Declension;

except all *Feminine Nouns*, of which the inflection of the Nominative Plural is the distinguishing mark (see § 15).

Ancient Declension (see §§ 17 and 20).

§ 12. When the inflection of the Genitive Singular is *es*, the Dative Singular takes *e*.

When the inflection of the Genitive Singular is *s*, the Dative Singular remains unchanged.

The Accusative Singular is always like the Nominative.

§ 13. The Nominative Plural has four different forms:

Form I.—*e*; Form II.—no change; Form III.—*er*; Form IV.—*en*,
 or *n*.

The Genitive and Accusative Plural are like the Nominative Plural.

The Dative Plural takes an *n* to the Nominative, if it does not end in *n*.

Thus, in order to decline a Noun of the Ancient Declension, you must know—

- I. The Genitive Singular (see § 28).
- II. The Nominative Plural (see § 29).

§ 14. *Modern Declension* (see §§ 18 and 20).

A Noun taking in the Genitive Singular *en* or *n* is said to belong to the Modern Declension, and then all other cases, Singular and Plural, take the same inflection.

§ 15. *Feminine Substantives.*

All **Feminine Substantives** remain unchanged in the **Singular**. In the **Plural** they are mostly declined according to the **Modern Declension**, but **Original Monosyllables** are declined according to the **First Form** of the **Ancient Declension**.

The inflection of the **Nominative Plural**, therefore, is the distinguishing mark in the two Declensions of **Feminine Nouns**.

§ 16. *Neuter Nouns.*

All **Neuter Nouns** are declined according to the **Ancient Declension**.

§ 17. *A.* Nouns belonging to the **Ancient Declension** ending in *e*, *el*, *er*, *en*, diminutives in *chen* and *lein*, and foreign nouns in *or*, always form the **Genitive Singular** by the mere addition of an *ē* to the stem, and remain unchanged in the **Dative** and **Accusative Singular**.

B. After a hissing sound, i.e. after *ā*, *h* or *h̄*, *ch* and *g*, the inflection of the **Genitive Singular** is always *eā*.

C. Nouns terminating in *h*, *d*, *t*, *ft*, *ch*, *g*, and *f*, form the **Genitive Singular** more generally by adding *eā* than by adding *ā*, and nouns terminating in any other letters but those mentioned above, take either *eā* or *ā*.

In fact, respecting the **Genitive-formation** of nouns belonging to the **Ancient Declension**, the student must be guided by euphony to decide whether the one or the other inflection is required. He must keep in mind that the characteristic mark of this declension lies in the inflection *ā* of the **Genitive Singular**, and that the insertion of the vowel *e* between the stem and the inflection is *necessary* only in cases where harshness would arise through a combination of dissonant sounds.

Much depends, however, also on the style of writing or delivery; for whilst in ordinary prose the *e* of the inflection *eā* is elided whenever euphony admits of it, we generally find it retained in more elevated diction, and the same may be said of the **Dative Inflection e**.

§ 18. With **Nouns** belonging to the **Modern Declension** the **Nominative Singular** decides whether the inflection is to be *en* or *u*. When the noun ends in *e*, *el*, and *er*, the inflection is merely *n*, in other instances *en*.

§ 19. Notice that the **Nominative**, **Genitive**, and **Accusative** of the **Plural** are always alike. All **Nouns** have the termination *u* in the **Dative Plural**.

When, in the **Declension** of a noun, the vowels of the stem *a*, *o*, *u*, and the diphthong *au*, are changed for the **Plural** into *ā*, *ō*, *ū*, and *āu* (§§ 2 and 3), the vowels are said to be modified.

Only the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, and the diphthong *au*, can be modified.

(This Table is for Reference only.)

A Table of both Declensions.

§ 20.

I. ANCIENT DECLENSION.					II. MODERN DECLENSION.				
SINGULAR. (See § 15.)					SINGULAR.				
Nominative	.	.	.	.	Nom.	.	.	.	
Genitive	.	.	.	.	Gen.	.	.	ei or ii	
Dative	.	.	.	.	Dat.	.	.	ei or ii	
Accusative	.	.	.	.	Acc.	.	.	ei or ii	
					NOTE. — All feminine nouns remain unchanged in the singular.				
PLURAL.					PLURAL.				
Form I.	Form II.				Form III.				Form IV.
Nom.	e	.	.	.	.	er	.	.	ei or ii
Gen.	e	.	.	.	.	er	.	.	ei or ii
Dat.	ei	.	.	.	.	er	.	.	ei or ii
Acc.	e	.	.	.	.	er	.	.	ei or ii
<i>Models.</i>					<i>Models.</i>				
der Tisch, the table.	die Mutter, the mother.	der Geist, the spirit.	der Waß, the mast.		die Frau, the woman.				
das Wein, the leg.	die Tochter, the daughter.	das Dorf, the village.	der Schmerz, grief.		der Graf, the count.				
die Hand, the hand.	das Mädchen, the girl.	das Lied, the song.	das Auge, the eye.		der Affe, the ape.				
					(For Particulars and Exceptions see the Appendix.)				

§ 21. To the first Form belong—	§ 22. To the second Form belong—	§ 23. To the third Form belong—	§ 24. To the fourth Form belong—	§ 25. To the Modern Declension belong—
<p>(a) Most monosyllabic masculine nouns, and monosyllabic neuter nouns, not belonging to Forms III and IV.</p> <p>(b) Feminine nouns originally monosyllabic.</p> <p>(c) Dissyllabic masculine nouns with the prefix Be and Ver.</p> <p>(d) Nouns ending in uig, sal, and ling.</p> <p>(e) Nouns with the prefix Ge, and ending with the root-syllable.</p> <p>(f) Some foreign nouns.</p>	<p>(a) The two feminine nouns die Mutter, die Tochter.</p> <p>(b) Masculine and neuter nouns ending in el, er, en, and diminutives in chen and lein.</p> <p>(c) A few other masculine and neuter nouns.</p>	<p>(a) Most monosyllabic neuter nouns.</p> <p>(b) All nouns ending in thum.</p> <p>(c) Ten masculine nouns.</p> <p>(d) A few neuter nouns of two and three syllables.</p>	<p>(a) A few masculine and neuter nouns.</p> <p>(b) Foreign nouns ending in or: der Doctor, der Professor.</p>	<p>(a) All masculine nouns ending in e, representing persons and animals.</p> <p>(b) Masculine nouns which originally ended in e, but which have lost it in modern times.</p> <p>(c) Most feminine nouns. (For exceptions see Appendix, § 1, C, and § 2, A.)</p>
<p>(g) The vowel of the stem is modified (§ 19), (1) in all the fem. nouns, (2) in most of the mascul. nouns.</p>	<p>(d) The vowel of the stem is modified in many of the masculine nouns.</p>	<p>(e) The vowel of the stem is always modified.</p>	<p>(c) The vowel of the stem is never modified.</p>	<p>(d) The vowel of the stem is never modified.</p>

§ 26.

Models of the two Declensions.

I. ANCIENT DECLENSION.

Form I.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	der Tisch,	das Bein,	die Hand*.
Gen.	des Tisches,	des Beines,	der Hand.
Dat.	dem Tische,	dem Beine,	der Hand.
Acc.	den Tisch,	das Bein,	die Hand.

PLURAL.

Nom.	die Tische,	Beine,	Hände.
Gen.	der Tische,	Beine,	Hände.
Dat.	den Tischen,	Beinen,	Händen.
Acc.	die Tische,	Beine,	Hände.

Form II.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	die Mutter*,	die Tochter*,	das Mädchen.
Gen.	der Mutter,	der Tochter,	des Mädchens.
Dat.	der Mutter,	der Tochter,	dem Mädchen.
Acc.	die Mutter,	die Tochter,	das Mädchen.

PLURAL.

Nom.	die Mütter,	Töchter,	Mädchen.
Gen.	der Mütter,	Töchter,	Mädchen.
Dat.	den Müttern,	Töchtern,	Mädchen.
Acc.	die Mütter,	Töchter,	Mädchen.

Form III.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	der Geist,	das Dorf,	das Lied.
Gen.	des Geistes,	des Dorfes,	des Liedes.
Dat.	dem Geiste,	dem Dorfe,	dem Liede.
Acc.	den Geist,	das Dorf,	das Lied.

PLURAL.

Nom.	die Geister,	Dörfer,	Lieder.
Gen.	der Geister,	Dörfer,	Lieder.
Dat.	den Geistern,	Dörfern,	Liedern.
Acc.	die Geister,	Dörfer,	Lieder.

* See § 13.

Form IV.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	der Maß,	der Schmerz,	das Auge.
Gen.	des Maßes,	des Schmerzes,	des Auges.
Dat.	dem Maße,	dem Schmerze,	dem Auge.
Acc.	den Maß,	den Schmerz,	das Auge.

PLURAL.

Nom.	die Maßen,	Schmerzen,	Augen.
Gen.	der Maßen,	Schmerzen,	Augen.
Dat.	den Maßen,	Schmerzen,	Augen.
Acc.	die Maßen,	Schmerzen,	Augen.

II. MODERN DECLENSION.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	der Graf,	der Affe,	die Frau.
Gen.	des Grafen,	des Affen,	der Frau.
Dat.	dem Grafen,	dem Affen,	der Frau.
Acc.	den Grafen,	den Affen,	die Frau.

PLURAL.

Nom.	die Grafen,	Affen,	Frauen.
Gen.	der Grafen,	Affen,	Frauen.
Dat.	den Grafen,	Affen,	Frauen.
Acc.	die Grafen,	Affen,	Frauen.

§ 27. The two nouns *der Herr*, gentleman, master, and *das Herz*, the heart, have a declension of their own:

SINGULAR.

Nom.	der Herr, the gentleman.
Gen.	des Herrn, of the gentleman.
Dat.	dem Herrn, to the gentleman.
Acc.	den Herrn, the gentleman.

PLURAL.

die Herren, the gentlemen.
der Herren, of the gentlemen.
den Herren, to the gentlemen.
die Herren, the gentleman.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	das Herz, the heart.
Gen.	des Herzens, of the heart.
Dat.	dem Herzen, to the heart.
Acc.	das Herz, the heart.

PLURAL.

die Herzen, the hearts.
der Herzen, of the hearts.
den Herzen, to the hearts.
die Herzen, the hearts.

§ 28. GENERAL RULES FOR THE FORMATION
OF THE
GENITIVE SINGULAR (§ 11).

A.

All Feminine Nouns remain **unchanged** throughout the Singular (§ 15).

B.

All Neuter Nouns and **most Masculine Nouns** take in the Genitive Singular *es* or *s* (§ 17).

(For exception see Appendix, § 5, A and B.)

C.

All Masculine Nouns ending in *e*, representing Persons and Animals, are declined according to the **Modern Declension**.

Inflection: *u* (§ 18) for all cases, Singular and Plural.

(See Appendix, § 5, A.)

D.

Masculine Nouns which originally ended in an unaccented *e*, but which have lost it in modern times, are declined according to the **Modern Declension**.

Inflection: *u* (§ 18) for all cases, Singular and Plural.

[Among these are especially many appellations of *male persons and male animals*, and nouns of *foreign origin* ending in *t* and *ft*.]

(See Appendix, § 5, B.)

§ 29. GENERAL RULES FOR THE FORMATION
OF THE
NOMINATIVE PLURAL (§ 13).

A.

All Feminine Nouns ending in *e*, and most other Feminine Nouns, are declined according to the **Modern Declension**. Inflection: *en* or *n* (§ 18).

The vowel of the stem is **never modified** (§ 25, *d*).

(For exceptions see Appendix, § 1, C, D, and F, and § 2, A.)

B.

Feminine Nouns originally monosyllabic take *e*.

The vowel of the stem is **always modified**.

(For a list see Appendix, § 1, C.)

C.

Masculine and Neuter Nouns ending in *el*, *er*, *en*, Diminutives in *chen* and *lein*, and Neuter Nouns ending in *e* with the prefix *Ge* remain unchanged.

The vowel of the stem of **Masculine Nouns** is **often modified**.

(For exceptions see Appendix, § 4, A, and § 5, E. For a list of nouns modifying the vowel of the stem see Appendix, § 2, B.)

D.

Most Monosyllabic Masculine Nouns take *e*.

(For exceptions see Appendix, § 3, C, § 4, B, § 5, B.)

The vowel of the stem is **mostly modified** (see App. § 1, A)

E.

Most Monosyllabic Neuter Nouns take *er*.

The vowel of the stem is **always modified**.

(For a list see App. § 3, A. For exceptions see App. § 1, B, and § 4, C.)

F.

The inflection *e* is given—(1) To **Dissyllabic Masculine Nouns** with the prefix *Be* and *Wer* (see App. § 1, E). (2) To nouns ending in *niß* and *sal*, and to masculine and neuter nouns ending in *ling*, *ig*, *ich*, *icht*, and *at* (see App. § 1, F). (3) To nouns with the **prefix *Ge*** and **ending with the root-syllable** (see App. § 1, G). (4) To many **foreign nouns**, especially to **titles and names of inanimate objects** (see App. § 1, H).

The vowel of the stem is **sometimes modified**.

B. DECLENSION OF NON-GERMANIZED FOREIGN NOUNS.

§ 30. Latin words add only *s* to the genitive singular, if the nominative has not an *s* already. The Latin nominative plural is used for the four plural cases.

Examples.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	der Medicus, das Verbum.	die Medici, die Verba.
Gen.	des Medicus, des Verbums.	der Medici, der Verba.
Dat.	dem Medicus, dem Verbum.	den Medici, den Verba.
Acc.	den Medicus, das Verbum.	die Medici, die Verba.

Many Latin nouns in *um*, however, have in the plural a German declension, and change *um* into *en*; as—das Evangelium, die Evangelien, das Gymnasium, die Gymnasien. But when foreign nouns with the termination *um* or *us* have been shortened already in the singular, they often form their plural in *e*: das Seminar, die Seminare; das Substantiv, die Substantive; der Decan (from decanus), pl. die Decane. We say, however, das Princip, pl. die Principien; das Particip, pl. die Participien; das Adverb, pl. die Adverbien; das Material, pl. die Materialien; das Fossil, die Fossilien.

§ 31. Foreign nouns taken from modern languages take *s* for the genitive singular, while feminine words remain altogether unchanged in the singular. The plural is formed by adding *s* for all cases, if the nominative has not an *s* already.

Examples.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Nom.	der Chef, die	} Lady.	Nom. die
Gen.	des Chefs, der		Gen. der
Dat.	dem Chef, der		Dat. den
Acc.	den Chef, die		Acc. die
			Chefs, Ladys.

C. DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

§ 32. Names of nations, rivers, seas, mountains, forests, etc., being used with the definite article, and a few names of countries exceptionally masculine and feminine, are inflected like common nouns; as—N. der Spanier, G. des Spaniers, N. Pl. die Spanier, Spaniard; N. die Elbe, G. der Elbe, etc.; N. der Franzose, G. des Franzosen, N. Pl. die Franzosen, Frenchman; N. die Weser, G. der Weser; N. die Dstsee, G. der Dstsee, the Baltic; N. der Brocken, G. des Brockens, D. dem Brocken, A. den Brocken, the Brocken (one of the Harz mountains).

§ 33. Names of **towns, villages**, and names of **countries** of the neuter gender, take **s** in the genitive singular, but are unchanged in all other cases. Those ending in **s**, **x**, and **z** form the genitive by means of the preposition **von**, or by the preceding genitive of the words *Stadt, Dorf*, etc.: N. Hamburg, G. Hamburg**s**; N. Breslau, G. Breslau's ^{*}; N. Paris, G. **von** Paris, **der Stadt** Paris.

Proper Names of Persons.

I. SINGULAR.

§ 34. Proper names of persons *preceded by the definite or the indefinite article* remain **unchanged** in the singular; as—*der, des, dem, den* Heine, Hermann, Schiller. But when the genitive of a proper name, qualified by an adjective, stands before the governing word, 's is added; as—*des großen* Schiller's Werke, the great Schiller's works.

§ 35. Proper names of persons *without the article* take **s** or 's in the genitive singular (Dat. and Acc. unchanged); as—N. Karl, G. Karl**s**; N. Minna, G. Minna's; N. Schiller, G. Schiller's. (An apostrophe is required only after a vowel and after family names.)

But names of *male persons* ending in **s**, **n**, **h**, **sch**, **x**, **z**, and names of *female persons* ending in **e** have in the genitive **ens**. Thus we say Karl**s**, Friedrich**s**, Luther's, Otto's, but Hans**ens**, Fritz**ens**, Luise**ens**, Sophie**ens**.

2. PLURAL.

§ 36. The plural of proper names of persons is declined, *with or without the article*, in the following ways:—

(a) Some names of females ending in **e** take **n**: Sophie, Sophie**n**; whilst others, and especially those ending in **a**, seem not to be used in the plural.

(b) Names of males ending in **a**, **e**, **i**, **el**, **en**, **er**, and neuter names in **en** remain **unchanged** in all cases, except in the *dative*, which takes an **n** where there is no **n** in the nominative: N. die Luther, die Hansen; D. den Luther**n**, den Hansen.

(c) Names ending in **o** sometimes take **ne**: Nero, Nerone; sometimes **nen**: Scipio, Scipione**n**.

(d) All other German names of male persons, and foreign names ending in **en** and **am** take **e** for the *nominative*, *genitive*, and *accusative* plural, and **en** for the *dative* plural; as—Wilhelm, Wilhelm**e**; Melancton, Melanctone; Adam, Adame. D. pl. den Wilhelm**en**, etc.

* An apostrophe between the noun and s is required only after a vowel.

CHAPTER IV.

THE ADJECTIVE (*Das Beiwort*).

I. DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 37. An adjective may be used, 1st, as an **attribute**, 2nd, as a **predicate**, and 3rd, in **apposition** with a noun or a pronoun.

Examples.

Das schöne Mädchen.	The beautiful girl (<i>schön</i> attribute to <i>Mädchen</i>).
Das Mädchen ist schön.	The girl is beautiful (<i>schön</i> predicate).
Ein Mädchen schön und wunderbar (Sch.).	A maiden beautiful and wonderful (<i>schön</i> and <i>wunderbar</i> in apposition).

§ 38. The adjective used in apposition, or as a predicate not followed by a noun, is never declined.

§ 39. The adjective used as an attribute is always placed immediately before the noun it qualifies, and is declined in three different ways; viz.:—

- 1st. When not preceded by any article, adjective-pronoun, or numeral.
- 2nd. When preceded by the definite article or a word with the terminations *er, e, es* (see § 6).
- 3rd. When preceded by the indefinite article, the numerals *ein* and *kein*, or a possessive adjective-pronoun (see § 7 and § 68).

§ 40. I. *First (strong or ancient) Form of Declension.*

SINGULAR.

	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.
	good apple,	good pen,	good field.
Nom.	guter Apfel,	gute Feder,	gutes Feld.
Gen.	gutes* Apfels,	guter Feder,	gutes* Feldes.
Dat.	gutem Apfel,	guter Feder,	gutem Felde.
Acc.	guten Apfel,	gute Feder,	gutes Feld.

PLURAL.

Nom.	gute Äpfel,	Federn,	Felder.
Gen.	guter Äpfel,	Federn,	Felder.
Dat.	guten Äpfeln,	Federn,	Feldern.
Acc.	gute Äpfel,	Federn,	Felder.

RULE.—When not preceded by any article, adjective-pronoun, or numeral, the adjective takes the distinctive terminations of the definite article (see § 6).

§ 41. II. *Second (weak or modern) Form of Declension.*

SINGULAR.

	the good apple,	the good pen,	the good field.
Nom.	der gute Apfel,	die gute Feder,	das gute Feld.
Gen.	des guten Apfels,	der guten Feder,	des guten Feldes.
Dat.	dem guten Apfel,	der guten Feder,	dem guten Felde.
Acc.	den guten Apfel,	die gute Feder,	das gute Feld.

PLURAL.

Nom.	die guten Äpfel,	Federn,	Felder.
Gen.	der guten Äpfel,	Federn,	Felder.
Dat.	den guten Äpfeln,	Federn,	Feldern.
Acc.	die guten Äpfel,	Federn,	Felder.

RULE.—When preceded by the definite article, or a word with the strong terminations *er, e, es* (see § 6), the adjective takes *e* in the nominative singular for all genders, and in the accusative singular of the feminine and neuter gender, *en* in all the other cases.

* In the *genitive singular* of the masculine and neuter genders modern writers prefer to give the adjective the termination *en* instead of *es* for the sake of euphony; as—guten Weines, guten Kindes.

§ 42. III. *Third (or mixed) Form of Declension.*

SINGULAR.

	a good apple,	a good pen,	a good field.
Nom.	ein guter Apfel,	eine gute Feder,	ein gutes Feld.
Gen.	eines guten Apfels,	einer guten Feder,	eines guten Feldes.
Dat.	einem guten Apfel,	einer guten Feder,	einem guten Felde.
Acc.	einen guten Apfel,	eine gute Feder,	ein gutes Feld.

PLURAL.

	no good apples,	pens,	fields.
Nom.	keine guten Äpfel,	Federn,	Felder.
Gen.	keiner guten Äpfel,	Federn,	Felder.
Dat.	keinen guten Äpfeln,	Federn,	Feldern.
Acc.	keine guten Äpfel,	Federn,	Felder.

RULE.—When preceded by the indefinite article, the numerals *ein* and *kein*, or a possessive adjective-pronoun (see § 7), the adjective takes—

In the Nominative Singular of the masculine gender . *er*,
of the feminine gender . *e*,
of the neuter gender . . *es*,

and in all the other cases *en*. The Accusative Singular feminine and neuter, however, is always like the Nominative.

§ 43. (a) Adjectives ending in *el*, *er*, *en* (also comparatives in *er*) drop the *e* of those syllables *before the inflections e, er, es, en*:

edel, noble: edl=*e* Frau, edl=*er* Mann, edl=*es* Kind.

größer, greater: größt=*er*, größt=*e*, größt=*es*.

vollkommen, perfect: vollkommn=*er*, vollkommn=*e*, vollkommn=*es*.

(b) Adjectives and comparatives ending in *er* may also drop the *e* of the inflection *en*:

heiter, cheerful: heiter=*m*. größer: größer=*m*.

(c) Adjectives and comparatives ending in *el* and *er* *should drop the e of the inflection en*:

edel: edel=*n*. heiter: heiter=*n*.

§ 44. Adjectives used as substantives are declined as they would be if the noun followed them, but take a capital letter:

Sing. N. der Weise (the wise man), G. des Weisen, D. dem Weisen,
A. den Weisen.

Pl. N. die Weisen, G. der Weisen, D. den Weisen, A. die Weisen.

§ 45. *A.* With the pronouns *selcher* and *welcher*, and the indefinite numerals (*aller, anderer, einiger, etlicher, keiner, mehrerer, vieler, mancher*), the use differs. When preceded by these words, the adjective takes generally the strong termination in the *nominative singular* and in the *nominative* and *accusative plural*, but in the other cases the adjective takes regularly the weak termination:

Nom. sing. . . . *selcher großer Mann, G. selches großen Mannes.*

Nom. and Acc. pl. *selche große Männer, G. selcher großen Männer.*

B. When two or more adjectives precede a noun, all have the termination of the first:

Mit frohem, kindlichem Gemüth, with a joyful, childlike mind.

C. An adjective preceded by an indefinite numeral *and* an article (*Ex. 1*), or by *two* pronouns (*Ex. 2*), is inflected according to that word which immediately precedes it:

1. *Ein jedes gute Kind, every good child.*

2. *Dieser, mein lieber Sohn, this, my dear son.*

D. One pronoun does not affect the inflection of another:

In diesem meinem Hause bin ich Herr. In this my own house I am the master.

E. Some participles and adjectives, used with a pronominal meaning, require the adjective following them to be declined according to the weak declension.

Such words are—*folgender, nachstehender, vorstehender, obiger, voriger, erwähnter, etc.:*

Folgender wichtiger Satz (like dieser The following important sentence.
wichtiger Satz).

Nach oben erwähnter (Dat.) unter uns According to the above mentioned
getroffenen (Dat.) Abrede. agreement made between us.

2. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

A. THE COMPARATIVE.

§ 46. The comparison of *equality* is expressed by *so*, *as*, or *eben so*, just as, before the adjective, followed by *wie*, *as*, after the adjective; as—

1. *Marie ist so (eben so) liebenswürdig wie ihre Schwester. Marie is as (just as) amiable as her sister.*

2. *Er ist eben so gut wie reich. He is just as good, as he is rich.*

§ 47. The comparison of *superiority* between two qualities in one person or one thing is expressed by *mehr*, *more*, or *eher*, *rather*, before the first adjective, and *als*, *than*, before the second; as—

1. *Er war mehr todt als lebendig. He was more dead than alive.*

2. *Sie ist eher hübsch als schön. She is rather pretty than beautiful.*

§ 48. The comparison of *superiority* of one and the same quality possessed by two or more persons or things is expressed by

adding **er** to the positive degree—**fleißig**, **fleißiger**. The English *than* is rendered by **als**; as—

1. Sein Bruder ist fleißiger als er. His brother is more diligent than he.
2. Er ist weiser als sein Bruder. He is wiser than his brother.

Only **r** is added when the adjective ends in **e** (see Ex. 2).

Most adjectives of **one** syllable, in the comparative and superlative degrees, change the vowel **a**, **o**, **u** into **ä**, **ö**, **ü**: **lang**, long, länger; **groß**, great, größer; **kurz**, short, kürzer.

(For exceptions see § 51.)

§ 49. The comparison of **inferiority** between **two** qualities in **one** person or **one** thing is expressed by—**weniger** or **minder**, less; **nicht so**, not so; **nicht so wohl**, not so much, before the first adjective, and **als**, than, before the second; as—

1. Der Tisch ist weniger breit als lang. The table is less broad than long.
2. Er ist nicht so böse als hitzig. He is not so angry as passionate.
3. Sie ist nicht so wohl hübsch als eitel. She is not so much pretty as vain.

§ 50. Adjectives ending in **el**, **er**, **en** drop the **e** of these syllables in the comparative, but retain it in the superlative, when they drop the **e** of the *termination*; as—

edel, edler, edelst, noble (see § 53); **munter**, munterer, munterst, cheerful.

§ 51. The following monosyllabic adjectives **do not change the vowel** in the comparative and superlative degrees (see § 53):—

blaß,	blässer,	blassest,	pale.	laß,	lässer,	lassest,	tired.
brav,	braver,	bravst,	brave.	los,	loser,	losest,	loose.
bunt,	bunter,	buntest,	variegated.	matt,	matter,	matteſt,	tired.
dumpf,	dumpfer,	dumpfst,	dull.	morsch,	morscher,	morscheſt,	rotten.
fahl,	fahler,	fahlst,	fallow.	nackt,	nackter,	nackteſt,	naked.
fade,	fader,	fadeſt,	insipid.	platt,	platter,	platteſt,	flat.
falsch,	falscher,	falscheſt,	false.	plump,	plumper,	plumpſt,	clumsy.
flach,	flacher,	flacheſt,	shallow.	raſch,	raſcher,	raſcheſt,	quick.
froh,	froher,	froheſt,	cheerful.	roh,	roher,	roheſt,	raw.
glatt,	glatter,	glatteſt,	smooth.	rund,	runder,	rundeſt,	round.
hohl,	hohler,	hohleſt,	hollow.	ſacht,	ſachter,	ſachteſt,	{gentle, soft.
hohl,	holder,	holdeſt,	fair.	ſanft,	ſanfter,	ſanfteſt,	{gentle, smooth.
kahl,	kahler,	kahleſt,	bald.	ſatt,	ſatter,	ſatteſt,	satisfied.
karg,	karger,	kargſt,	stingy.	ſchlaff,	ſchlaffer,	ſchlaffeſt,	loose, lax.
knapp,	knapper,	knappſt,	tight.				
lahm,	lahmer,	lahmeſt,	lame.				

schlank, schlanker, schlankst, slender.	stumm, stummer, stummst, dumb.
schroff, schroffer, schroffst, steep.	stumpf, stumpfer, stumpfst, blunt.
starr, starrer, starrst, {stiff,	toll, toller, tollst, mad.
{ unbending,	voll, voller, vollst, full.
{ obstinate.	wahr, wahrer, wahrst, {true,
stolz, stolzer, stolzest, proud.	{ real.
straff, straffer, straffst, {stretched,	zähm, zähmer, zähmst, tame.
{ strait.	

And all adjectives with the diphthong *au*; as—

blau, blauer, blaust, blue; faul, fauler, faulst, idle; etc.

§ 52. The comparatives and superlatives of adjectives are declined like adjectives in the positive degree (see §§ 40-42).

B. THE SUPERLATIVE OF COMPARISON.

§ 53. The superlative of comparison is formed by adding *est* or *st* to the adjective; *est* is used only after a d-sound, a t-sound or a hissing sound (*f*, *ß*, *sch*, *ß*), in all other cases *st* is used (see § 48 and § 51); as—

berühmt, famous, berühmter, berühmtest; schön, beautiful, schöner, schönst.

Er ist der berühmteste Mann der Stadt (see § 52). He is the most famous man in the town.

Dies ist sein neuester Rock. This is his newest coat.

§ 54. When the superlative of comparison is used as a predicate, it is generally preceded by *am* (the preposition *an* contracted with the definite article, dative case singular, masculine), and takes the dative termination *en* :—

süß, süßer, am süßesten, sweet, sweeter, sweetest.

Diese Birne ist süß, jene ist süßer, This pear is sweet, that is sweeter,
diese ist am süßesten. this is the sweetest.

C. THE SUPERLATIVE OF EMINENCE.

§ 55. The superlative of eminence is generally expressed by one of the following adverbs :—

äußerst, extremely.	höchst, most.	überrauch, extremely.
außerordentlich, extraordinarily.	recht, {very.	ungemein, uncommonly.
ganz, quite.	sehr, }	vorzüglich, exceedingly.

§ 56. *Irregular and Defective Forms of Comparison.*

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
gut, good,	besser,	der, die, das beste.
hoch, high,	höher,	" " " höchste.
nah, near,	näher,	" " " nächste.
viel, much,	mehr,	" " " meiste.
wenig, little,	{ minder,	" " " mindeste.
	{ or weniger,	" " " wenigste.

COMPARATIVE.		SUPERLATIVE.	
der, die, das äußere,	the outer.	der, die, das äußerste,	the outermost.
" " " erstere,	the former.	" " " erste,	the first.
" " " hintere,	the hinder.	" " " hinterste,	the hindmost.
" " " innere,	the inner.	" " " innerste,	the innermost.
" " " letztere,	the latter.	" " " letzte,	the last.
" " " mittlere,	the middle.	" " " mittelfte,	the midmost.
" " " obere,	the upper.	" " " oberste,	the uppermost.
" " " untere,	the under.	" " " unterste,	the undermost.
" " " vordere,	{ the one before,	{	" " " vorderste, the foremost.
	{ the one in front.		

CHAPTER V.

THE NUMERAL (*Das Zahlwort*).

A. THE CARDINAL NUMERALS.

§ 57. 1, Eins, or	13, dreizehn.	50, fünfzig.
ein, eine, ein.	14, vierzehn.	60, sechzig.
2, zwei.	15, fünfzehn.	70, siebenzig.
3, drei.	16, sechzehn.	80, achtzig.
4, vier.	17, siebenzehn.	90, neunzig.
5, fünf.	18, achtzehn.	100, hundert.
6, sechs.	19, neunzehn.	101, hundert und eins.
7, sieben.	20, zwanzig.	102, hundert zwei.
8, acht.	21, ein und zwanzig.	121, hundert ein und zwanzig.
9, neun.	22, zwei und zwanzig.	200, zwei hundert.
10, zehn.	23, drei und zwanzig.	1.000, tausend.
11, elf.	30, dreißig.	2.000, zwei tausend.
12, zwölf.	40, vierzig.	100,000, hundert tausend.
a million, eine Million.		a billion, eine Billion.
two millions, zwei Millionen.		a trillion, eine Trillion.

1873, Ein tausend acht hundert drei und siebenzig.

§ 58. *Eins* is used (*a*) in counting—*Eins*, *zwei*, *drei*, one, two, three; (*b*) at the end of a compound numeral: *hundert und eins*, hundred and one; (*c*) in the following phrase: *Es schlägt eins*, it strikes one.

Ein stands at the beginning and in the middle of a compound numeral, and also in the following phrase: *Es ist ein Uhr*, it is one o'clock.

Ein, *eine*, *ein*, are declined like the indefinite article:

Er hat nur einen Rock. He has only one coat.

In *writing* the numeral *ein*, *eine*, *ein* is distinguished from the indefinite article by a capital initial, and in printing by italics.

§ 59. *Zwei* and *drei* are inflected in the *genitive* and *dative* in cases where the genitive and dative are not indicated by the inflection of the noun or its attribute: *Die Freundschaft zweier Knaben*, the friendship of two boys. (*Gen.*) *Er hat es dreien Knaben mitgeteilt*, he has communicated it to three boys. (*Dat.*) But: *Er hat es drei Freunden mitgeteilt*, he has communicated it to three friends (because the dative plural is clearly indicated by the termination of the noun).

§ 60. The other numerals take only an inflection in the dative, when a noun is understood: Ich habe es Fünfen oder Sechsen gesagt, I have said it to five or six persons.

§ 61.

B. THE ORDINAL NUMERALS.

The	The	The
1st, der erste.	12th, der zwölfte.	40th, der vierzigste.
2nd, " zweite.	13th, " dreizehnte.	50th, " fünfzigste.
3rd, " dritte.	14th, " vierzehnte.	60th, " sechzigste.
4th, " vierte.	15th, " fünfzehnte.	80th, " achtzigste.
5th, " fünfte.	16th, " sechzehnte.	100th, " hundertste.
6th, " sechste.	17th, " siebzehnte.	101st, " { hundert und
7th, " siebente.	18th, " achtzehnte.	erste.
8th, " achte.	19th, " neunzehnte.	102nd, " { hundert und
9th, " neunte.	20th, " zwanzigste.	zweite.
10th, " zehnte.	21st, " ein und zwanzigste.	200th, " zwei hundertste.
11th, " elfte.	30th, " dreißigste.	1000th, " tausendste.

Das tausend acht hundert zwei und siebzigste Jahr.

All Ordinal Numerals are declined exactly like adjectives (see §§ 40-42).

§ 62.

C. THE DERIVATIVE NUMERALS.

The following derivative numerals are mostly formed from the two preceding classes of numerals, and the indefinite numerals (§§ 63-65):—

je zwei,	two and two.	zweierlei,	of two kinds.
je drei	three and three.	das Drittel or Dritt-	} the third part.
erstens or erstlich,	first.	theil,	
zweitens,	secondly.	das Viertel,	the fourth part.
drittens,	thirdly.	die Hälfte,	half (the).
zum ersten,	firstly.	die halbe Schule, or	} half the school.
zum zweiten,	secondly.	die Hälfte der Schule,	
zum dritten,	thirdly.	einmal,	once.
dritthalb,	two and a half.	zweimal,	twice.
siebenthalb,	six and a half.	dreimal,	three times, thrice.
anderthalb,	one and a half.	zweimalig,	twofold.
einfach,	simple.	ein zweimaliger Besuch,	a repeated visit.
zweifach,	twofold.	dieses Mal,	this time.
dreifach,	threesfold.	letztes Mal,	last time.
einfältig,	simple.	zum dritten Male,	for the third time.
zweifältig,	twofold.	Ein-er, Zehn-er, Hun-	} units, tens, hun-
einerlei,	of one kind.	derter, etc.,	
			dreds, etc.

D. THE INDEFINITE NUMERALS.

§ 63.

1. Denoting Number.

1. **Jeder, jede, jedes**, every, each, is declined like an adjective (§ 40):

Jeder Mensch ist sterblich, every man is mortal.

2. **Ein jeder, eine jede, ein jedes**, every, each, is declined like an adjective (§ 42):

Gutes zu thun, ist eines jeden Mannes Pflicht, to do good is the duty of every man.

3. **Einiger, einige, einiges**, some, is declined like an adjective (§ 40):

Er hat noch einige Hoffnung, he has still some hope.

4. **Einige** (plural), several, a few, is declined like an adjective (§ 40):

Wir sprachen von einigen unserer Freunde, als er ins Zimmer trat. We were talking of some of our friends, when he entered the room.

5. **Mancher, manche, manches**, many a, many a man, is declined like an adjective (§ 40):

Mancher Reiche ist unglücklich, many a rich man is unhappy.

6. **Manche** (plural), many, is declined like an adjective (§ 40):

Wir haben manche angenehme Stunden mit ihm verlebt. We have spent many pleasant hours with him.

7. **Beide**, both, is declined like an adjective (§§ 40, 41, 42), and never admits an article or a pronoun after it:

Meine beiden Freunde, both of my friends.

§ 64.

2. Denoting Quantity.

1. **Etwas**, some, something, somewhat, } are indeclinable.

2. **Nichts**, nothing,

Bringen Sie etwas Neues? Have you any news?

Nein, ich bringe nichts. No, I have none.

3. **Ganz**, whole, entire, is declined like an adjective (§§ 40, 41, 42):

Die ganze Stadt, the whole town. Ein ganzes Haus, a whole house.

4. **Halb**, half, is declined like an adjective (§§ 40, 41, 42):

Die halbe Schule, half the school. Eine halbe Stunde, half an hour.

NOTE.—**Ganz** and **halb** are **not** declined when used before the name of a country or place, unpreceded by an article: ganz England, the whole of England; ganz London, the whole of London; halb Deutschland, the half of Germany.

§ 65. 3. Denoting both Number and Quantity.

1. **All**, all, mostly uninflected before a demonstrative or a possessive pronoun-adjective:

All dieses Elend, all this misery;

but also:

Alles dieses großen Elends wegen, because of all this great misery.

2. **Aller, alle, alles**, all, all *the*, every, is declined like an adjective (§ 40):

Aller Anfang ist schwer, every beginning is difficult.

Alle Kinder lagen krank im Bette, all *the* children were ill in bed.

3. **Genug**, enough, is indeclinable. It may stand before or after the noun:

Wir haben Arbeit genug (or *genug Arbeit*), we have work enough.

4. **Sämmtlicher, sämmtliche, sämmtliches**, all, altogether, is declined like an adjective (§§ 40 and 41):

Sämmtliche Anwesende, all the persons assembled.

Die sämmtlichen Glieder der Familie, all the members of the family.

5. **Der, die, das gesammte**, the whole, is declined like an adjective (§ 41):

Das gesammte Volk erklärte, etc., the whole nation declared.

6. **Insgesammt**, altogether, is indeclinable:

Die Schüler insgesamt, the pupils altogether.

7. **Sammt und sonders**, altogether, each and all, is indeclinable:

Unsere Freunde sammt und sonders, each and all of our friends.

8. **Kein, keine, kein**, no, is declined like the indefinite article (§ 7) when it precedes a noun, but like an adjective (§ 40) when it is used substantively:

Kein Brod, no bread. *Keine Frau*, no woman.

Keiner von meinen Freunden, no one of my friends.

9. **Viel**, much, } are *uninflected* when denoting *quantity*, but *inflected*
10. **Wenig**, little, } like adjectives when denoting *number*.

Viel and *wenig* must *always* be *inflected* when preceded by the *definite article* or by a *pronoun*:

Vieles wünscht sich der Mensch (G.). Man wishes for many things.

Es können sich nur Wenige regieren (Sch.). Only a few people are able to govern themselves.

Viel Wasser und wenig Wein. Much water and little wine.

Was willst du mit dem vielen Gelde? What do you want with all that money?

18458 | 3887

11. **Mehr**, more, }
 12. **Weniger**, less, fewer, } are uninflected:

In England giebt es mehr Reiche, There are more rich people, but
 aber auch mehr Arme, als in also more poor people in Eng-
 Deutschland. land than in Germany.

13. **Mehrere**, answers to the English *several*, and is declined like an adjective:

Der Postbote brachte uns mehrere The postman brought us several
 Briefe. letters.

CHAPTER VI.

THE PRONOUN (*Das Fürwort*).

There are six sorts of Pronouns:—

- | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. Personal Pronouns. | 4. Relative Pronouns. |
| 2. Possessive Pronouns. | 5. Interrogative Pronouns. |
| 3. Demonstrative Pronouns. | 6. Indefinite Pronouns. |

§ 66. 1. *Personal Pronouns.*

First Person.

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.
Nom.	ich, I.	Nom.	wir, we.
Gen.	meiner (mein), of me.	Gen.	unser, of us.
Dat.	mir, to me.	Dat.	uns, to us.
Acc.	mich, me.	Acc.	uns, us.

Second Person.

Nom.	du, thou.	Nom.	ihr, you.
Gen.	deiner (dein), of thee.	Gen.	euer, of you.
Dat.	dir, to thee.	Dat.	euch, to you.
Acc.	dich, thee.	Acc.	euch, you.

Third Person.

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masculine.</i>		<i>Feminine.</i>		<i>Neuter.</i>
Nom.	er, he.		ſie, she.		eſ, it.
Gen.	ſeiner (ſein), of him.		ihrer, of her.		ſeiner (ſein), of it.
Dat.	ihm, to him.		ihr, to her.		ihm, to it.
Acc.	ihn, him.		ſie, her.		eſ, it.

PLURAL FOR ALL GENDERS.

Nom.	sie, they;	(Sie, you).
Gen.	ihrer, of them;	(Ihrer, of you).
Dat.	ihnen, to them;	(Ihnen, to you).
Acc.	sie, them;	(Sie, you).

NOTE.—The Genitives *mein*, *dein*, *sein* are obsolete, and are used only in a few phrases: *Vergiß mein nicht*, forget me not. *Ich denke dein*, I think of you. The pronouns of the third person plural are used instead of those of the second person for addressing strangers, when, for the sake of distinction, they are written with a capital initial.

§ 67. Only the **third** person has a **special** reflective and reciprocal pronoun: *sich*. The *dative* and *accusative* of the **personal** pronouns are used as **reflective** pronouns for the **first** and **second** persons.

FIRST PERSON.

SECOND PERSON.

Singular.	{ Dat. mir, }	myself.
	{ Acc. mich, }	
Plur. D. and A.	uns, ourselves.	

Singular.	{ Dat. dir, }	thyself.
	{ Acc. dich, }	
Plur. D. and A.	euch, yourselves.	

THIRD PERSON.

Singular.	{ Dat. }	sich, oneself, himself, herself, itself.
	{ Acc. }	
Plural. D. and A.	sich, themselves.	

§ 68.

2. Possessive Pronouns.

A. Conjunctive*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL for all Genders.
	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	
my,	mein,	meine,	mein;	meine.
thy,	dein,	deine,	dein;	deine.
his,	sein,	seine,	sein;	seine.
her,	ihr,	ihre,	ihr;	ihre.
its,	sein,	seine,	sein;	seine.
our,	unser,	unsere,	unser;	unsere. }
your,	euer,	eure,	euer;	eure. } (§ 69.)
their,	ihr,	ihre,	ihr;	ihre.

* The *conjunctive* possessive pronouns are always used in *conjunction* with nouns, and are usually called possessive adjective-pronouns in English grammar. Example: *Er vertheibigte sein Weib und seine Kinder*, he defended his wife and children. The *disjunctive* possessive-pronouns, however, are only used instead of nouns, and are, therefore, *absolute* pronouns. Example: *Sein Loos ist meines*, his fate is mine (Schiller).

All *conjunctive* Possessive Pronouns are declined—

In the *Singular* like the indefinite article,

And in the *Plural* like the indefinite numeral *sein* (§ 7).

In *polite address* with strangers *Ihr, Ihre, Ihr*, pl. *Ihre*, your, are used for the second person plural; as—

Ihr Haus ist zu klein für Ihre Familie. Your house is too small for your family.

Wie geht es Ihrer Frau und Ihren Kindern? How are your wife and children?

B. Disjunctive.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>for all Genders.</i>
mine,	<i>meiner,</i>	<i>meine,</i>	<i>meines;</i>	<i>meine.</i>
thine,	<i>deiner,</i>	<i>deine,</i>	<i>deines;</i>	<i>deine.</i>
his,	<i>seiner,</i>	<i>seine,</i>	<i>seines;</i>	<i>seine.</i>
hers,	<i>ihrer,</i>	<i>ihre,</i>	<i>ihrer;</i>	<i>ihre.</i>
its,	<i>seiner,</i>	<i>seine,</i>	<i>seines;</i>	<i>seine.</i>
ours,	<i>unserer,</i>	<i>unsere,</i>	<i>unseres;</i>	<i>unsere.</i>
yours,	<i>euerer,</i>	<i>eure,</i>	<i>eueres;</i>	<i>eure.</i>
theirs,	<i>ihrer,</i>	<i>ihre,</i>	<i>ihrer;</i>	<i>ihre.</i>

} (§ 69.)

To be declined like adjectives, after the Ancient Form, § 40.

Or else—

mine,	<i>der meinige,</i>	<i>die meinige,</i>	<i>das meinige;</i>	<i>die meinigen.</i>
hers,	<i>der ihrige,</i>	<i>die ihrige,</i>	<i>das ihrige;</i>	<i>die ihrigen.</i>

And also—

mine,	<i>der meine,</i>	<i>die meine,</i>	<i>das meine;</i>	<i>die meinen.</i>
hers,	<i>der ihre,</i>	<i>die ihre,</i>	<i>das ihre;</i>	<i>die ihren.</i>

} To be declined like adjectives, after the Modern Form, § 41.

§ 69. In the declension of *unser* and *euer* sometimes the *e* of the *stem* is elided, and sometimes the *e* of the *terminations* *es, er, em* and *en*; as—

unseres, or unsres, or unser's, of our;

euerem, or eurem, or euer'm, to our;

unseren, or unsren, or unsern, acc. sing. our, dat. pl. to our.

§ 70.

3. Demonstrative Pronouns.

All demonstrative pronouns can be used either as *conjunctive* demonstrative pronouns, or as *absolute* demonstrative pronouns. The former are always used in **connection with nouns**, and correspond to the English demonstrative adjective-pronouns; the latter are used instead of nouns, and are, therefore, *true* pronouns.

1. *der, die, daß, that, he, she, that one, this, the latter.* When used as *conjunctive* demonstrative pronouns, these words are declined like the definite article (§ 6).

Example.

Ich erinnere mich *deß* Tages sehr wohl. Es war *der* Tag, an dem mein Schicksal sich entschied. I remember that day very well. It was the day on which my fate was decided.

When used as *absolute* demonstrative pronouns, *der, die, daß* are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.				
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>English.</i>
Nom.	<i>der,</i>	<i>die,</i>	<i>daß,</i>	that.
Gen.	<i>deßsen,</i>	<i>deren,</i>	<i>deßsen (deßs),</i>	of that.
Dat.	<i>dem,</i>	<i>der,</i>	<i>dem,</i>	to that.
Acc.	<i>den,</i>	<i>die,</i>	<i>daß,</i>	that.

PLURAL.			<i>English.</i>
	<i>for all Genders.</i>		
Nom.	<i>die,</i>		those.
Gen.	<i>deren (or derer)*,</i>		of those.
Dat.	<i>denen,</i>		to those.
Acc.	<i>die,</i>		those.

2. *dieser, diese, dieses (or dieß), this, the latter.*
3. *jener, jene, jenes, that, the former.*
4. *solcher, solche, solches, such.*
5. *derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige, he, she, that.*
6. *derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe, the same.*

} To be declined like the definite article (§ 6).

} To be declined according to the Modern Declension of Adjectives (§ 41).

§ 71. Here follows the declension of *derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige*, which may also serve as a model for the declension of *derselbe, dieselbe, dasselbe*:

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL
	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Neuter.</i>	<i>for all Genders.</i>
Nom.	<i>derjenige,</i>	<i>diejenige,</i>	<i>dasjenige,</i>	<i>diejenigen.</i>
Gen.	<i>deßjenigen,</i>	<i>derjenigen,</i>	<i>deßjenigen,</i>	<i>derjenigen.</i>
Dat.	<i>demjenigen,</i>	<i>derjenigen,</i>	<i>demjenigen,</i>	<i>denjenigen.</i>
Acc.	<i>denjenigen,</i>	<i>diejenige,</i>	<i>dasjenige,</i>	<i>diejenigen.</i>

* The genitive plural is *derer* when it is used correlatively with a relative pronoun which follows it; as—

Die Meinung *derer*, welche mich hassen, ist mir gleichgültig. I am indifferent to the opinion of those who hate me.

Solcher, solche, solches, is also often preceded by the indefinite article, when it is declined in the following way:

Nom.	ein solcher,	eine solche,	ein solches (such a).
Gen.	eines solchen,	einer solchen,	eines solchen (of such a).
Dat.	einem solchen,	einer solchen,	einem solchen (to such a).
Acc.	einen solchen,	eine solche,	ein solches (such a).

§ 72.

4. Relative Pronouns.

1. **Wer** is only used in the singular instead of *derjenige, welcher*, and cannot be joined to a substantive; it is declined as follows: N. *wer*, he who, who; G. *wessen* or *wes*, whose; D. *wem*, to whom; A. *wen*, whom.

Example.

Wer nicht vorwärts geht, geht rückwärts. He who does not go forward, goes backward.

2. **Was** is likewise used only in the singular instead of *dasjenige, welches*, and cannot be joined to a substantive; it is declined as follows: N. *was*, that which, what; G. *wessen*, of what; D. not used; A. *was*, what.

Examples.

Was du mir soeben erzählt hast, ist nur zu wahr. What you have just told me, is but too true.

Ich weiß nicht, wessen man mich anklagt. I do not know what I am accused of.

3. **Welcher, welche, welches**, who, which, that, is used with reference to a preceding noun or a demonstrative pronoun; it is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL
	Masculine.	Feminine.	Neuter.	for all Genders.
Nom.	welcher,	welche,	welches,	welche.
Gen.	welches,	welcher,	welches,	welcher.
Dat.	welchem,	welcher,	welchem,	welchen.
Acc.	welchen,	welche,	welches,	welche.

Example.

Das Kind, welches (das) ich so innig liebte, ist todt. The child, which I loved so dearly, is dead.

4. **Der, die, das**, who, which, that, is often used instead of *welcher, welche, welches*; it is declined like the demonstrative pronoun *der, die, das*, see § 70. 1, but the genitive plural is *always* *deren*.

5. **So**, that, is indeclinable and obsolete.

§ 73.

5. *Interrogative Pronouns.*

1. **Wer**, who, is used *substantively*, and is declined as follows: N. wer, who; G. wessen, whose; D. wem, to whom; A. wen, whom.
2. **Was**, what, is *indeclinable* and always used *substantively*.
3. **Welcher, welche, welches**, which, is always used *adjectively*, followed by a substantive, or in reference to a substantive preceding; it is declined like the relative pronoun *welcher, welche, welches*, § 72, 3.

Examples.

- (a) Welchen von diesen Tischen haben Sie gekauft? — Diesen. Which of these tables have you bought? — This one.
- (b) Wir werden ein Pferd kaufen. Welches? — Jenes. We are going to buy a horse. Which? — That one.

4. **Was für ein**, what sort of, is used before nouns in the singular (except with nouns of material, as Wein, wine; Obst, fruit). Only the last component is declined, like the indefinite article.

Before nouns of material *was für* is used: *Was für Wein?* what sort of wine?

In colloquial language *was für einer, was für eine, was für eines* may be used substantively; and as a plural we may say: *was für welche?* what sorts?

Example.

Wer ist da? who is there? — *Ein Fremder*, a stranger.

Was für einer? what sort of stranger? — *Ein Soldat*, a soldier.

§ 74.

6. *Indefinite Pronouns.*

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------|---|
| 1. Einer, e, es, one, some one. | } (Decl. § 6.) | Ist Einer ertrunken? |
| 2. Keiner, e, es, no, no one. | | Nein, Keiner. Has anybody been drowned? No, nobody. |

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| 3. Jemand, somebody, | } in the genitive take es, and in the dative either remain unchanged, or take em; likewise the accusative either remains unchanged, or takes en. They are used with the same meaning as <i>Einer</i> and <i>Keiner</i> . |
| 4. Niemand, nobody, | |

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 5. Etwas, { anything,
something, | } remain undeclined, and are used only substantively. |
| 6. Nichts, nothing, | |

Example.

Haben Sie schon etwas erhalten? Have you received anything as yet?
Nein, nichts, no, nothing.

7. Man, one (French on), they, people, is only used in the nominative.

Example.

Man kann nicht vorwärts kommen	We	}	cannot succeed in the world
in der Welt, ohne ehrlich zu	One		without being honest.
sein.			
Man sagt, er sei ein Verschwender.	They	}	say (it is said) he is a
	People		spendthrift.

CHAPTER VII.

THE VERB (*Das Zeitwort*).

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Auxiliary Verbs of tenses. | 4. Auxiliary Verbs of mood. |
| 2. The modern form of conjugation. | 5. Irregular Verbs. |
| 3. The ancient form of conjugation. | 6. Reflective Verbs. |
| | 7. Impersonal Verbs. |
| | 8. Compound Verbs. |

§ 75.

Preliminary Remarks.

A. The Principal Parts in the Active Voice are: (1) the Infinitive mood, (2) the Present, (3) the Imperfect, (4) the Past Participle.

B. All verbs end in the Infinitive mood in **en** or **n**.

C. Verbs belonging to the *modern* form of conjugation (also called *weak verbs*) are inflected by prefixes and suffixes only; they never change the vowel of the stem.

Example.—*lieben*, to love. Imperfect, *liebte*, loved. Participle Past, *geliebt*, loved.

D. Verbs belonging to the *ancient* form of conjugation (also called *strong verbs*) are inflected by prefixes and suffixes, but also by *changing the vowel of the stem* in the Imperfect, often in the Past Participle, and sometimes also in the second and third person singular of the Present Indicative. Their Past Participle always ends in **en**, whilst that of weak verbs ends in **et** or **t**.

E. The following table shows the suffixes required for the conjugation of a verb belonging to the **modern conjugation** (weak verb). These suffixes are to be added to the Infinitive, after having dropped **en** or **n** :—

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
PRESENT SINGULAR.		IMPERFECT SINGULAR.	
1. e.	e.	1. ete or te.	ete.
2. eſt or ft.	eſt.	2. eteſt or teſt.	eteſt.
3. et or t.	e.	3. ete or te.	ete.
PLURAL.		PLURAL.	
1. en.	en.	1. eten or ten.	eten.
2. et or t.	et.	2. etet or tet.	etet.
3. en.	en.	3. eten or ten.	eten.
<i>Imperative.</i>		<i>Participles.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	Present, end.	
	1. en.	Past, <i>Prefix* or augment</i> ge,	
2. e.	2. et or t.	<i>suffix</i> et or t.	
3. e.	3. en.		

F. The *e* of the suffixes *eſt* and *et* is usually dropped in the Indicative Present and Imperfect, the Imperative and Past Participle; but when there would arise any difficulty of pronunciation, it is retained. Thus:

The *e* of *et* cannot be dropped after the *d* and *t*-sounds (*vd*, *t*, *tſ*, *it*), and after *gn* and *dn*; and

The *e* of *eſt* cannot be dropped after the same letters and besides those after *ſ*, *ſſ*, *ß*, *ſch*, and *z* (hissing sounds).

When the *e* of *et* is dropped after *ſ*, *f* and *t* are generally contracted into *ſt*: *er reiſt*, *ſpeiſt*; but in cases of ambiguity an apostrophe is put between *ſ* and *t*: *foſ'te* (*nicht foſte*), *raſ'te* (*nicht raſte*) †.

G. The Perfect and Pluperfect are formed by the help of the auxiliaries *ſein*, to be, and *haben*, to have, together with the Past Participle. The Present of the Auxiliary is used to form the Perfect, and the Imperfect to form the Pluperfect (§ 79).

H. The Future is formed by the help of the auxiliary *werden*. The First Future is formed by the help of the Present of *werden* together with the Infinitive Present of the verb to be conjugated, the Second Future by

* Verbs with the unaccented prefixes *be*, *emp*, *ent*, *er*, *ge*, *ver*, *zer*, *miß*, and the prepositional prefixes *durch*, *hinter*, *über*, *um*, *unter*, *voll*, do not admit of the prefix or augment *ge* in the Past Participle, see § 105. This is likewise the case with verbs ending in *iten*.

† *foſ'te* comes from *ſeſen* and means caressed, but *foſte* comes from *ſeſten*, to taste, to cost; *raſ'te* comes from *raſen*, to rave, to rage, but *raſte* comes from *raſten*, to rest, to repose.

the *same* tense of *werden* together with the Infinitive Past of the *verb* to be conjugated.

I. The First Conditional is formed by the Imperfect Subjunctive of *werden* and the Infinitive Present; *the Second Conditional* by the *same* tense of *werden* and the Infinitive Past of the *verb* to be conjugated.

K. The Passive Voice is formed by the auxiliary *werden* throughout, with the Participle Past of the *verb* to be conjugated.

1. Auxiliary Verbs of Tenses*.

§ 76.

1. *Sein*, to be.

Infinitives.

Present, *sein*, to be.

Past, *gewesen sein*, to have been.

Participles.

Present, *seiend*, being.

Past, *gewesen*, been.

Present.

Indicative.

ich bin, I am.

du bist, thou art.

er ist, *sie ist*, *es ist*, he, she, it is.

mir sind, we are.

ihr seid, you are (see the Manual, Lesson 1, note 1).

sie (Sie) sind, they (you) are.

Subjunctive or Conjunctive (see § 148.)

ich sei, I be.

du seiest (seist), thou be.

er, sie, es sei, he, she, it be.

mir seien, we be.

ihr seiet, you be.

sie (Sie) seien (seien), they (you) be.

Imperfect.

ich war, I was.

du warst, thou wast.

er war, he was.

mir waren, we were.

ihr wäret, you were.

sie waren, they were.

ich wäre, I were.

du wärest, thou were.

er wäre, he were.

mir wären, we were.

ihr wäret, you were.

sie wären, they were.

Perfect.

ich bin gewesen, I have been.

du bist gewesen, thou hast been.

etc. etc.

ich sei gewesen, I have been.

du seist gewesen, thou hast been.

etc. etc.

Pluperfect.

ich war gewesen, I had been.

du warst gewesen, thou hadst been.

etc. etc.

ich wäre gewesen, I had been.

du wärest gewesen, thou hadst been.

etc. etc.

* The auxiliaries *sein*, *werden*, and *haben* are irregular in their conjugation.

*Indicative.**First Future.**Subjunctive.*

ich werde sein, I shall be.
du wirst sein, thou wilt be.
er wird sein, he will be.
wir werden sein, we shall be.
ihr werdet sein, you will be.
sie werden sein, they will be.

ich werde sein, I shall be.
du werdest sein, thou wilt be.
er werde sein, he will be.
wir werden sein, we shall be.
ihr werdet sein, you will be.
sie werden sein, they will be.

Second Future.

ich werde } **gewesen sein**, I shall
du wirst } have been.
 etc. etc.

ich werde } **gewesen sein**, I shall
du werdest } have been.
 etc. etc.

*First Conditional.**Second Conditional.*

ich würde sein, I should be.
du würdest sein, thou wouldst be.
er würde sein, he would be.
wir würden sein, we should be.
ihr würdet sein, you would be.
sie würden sein, they would be.

ich würde gewesen sein, I should
du würdest gewesen sein, thou wouldst
er würde gewesen sein, he would
wir würden gewesen sein, we should
ihr würdet gewesen sein, you would
sie würden gewesen sein, they would } have been.

Imperative.

sei (du), be (thou).
sei er, let him be.

seien (sein) wir, let us be.
seid (ihr), be (ye).
seien (sein) sie, let them be.

§ 77.

2. *Werden, to become, to grow.**Infinitives.**Participles.*

Present, **werden**, to become (grow).
 Past, **geworden sein**, to have become.

Present, **werdend**, becoming.
 Past, **geworden***, become.

*Indicative.**Present.**Subjunctive.*

ich werde, I become, or I grow.
du wirst, thou becomest.
er wird, he becomes.
wir werden, we become.
ihr werdet, you become.
sie werden, they become.

ich werde, I become, or grow.
du werdest, thou becomest.
er werde, he becomes.
wir werden, we become.
ihr werdet, you become.
sie werden, they become.

* The Participle Past is *geworden* when used as a *real verb*, but *worden* when used as an *auxiliary verb* (§ 82).

*Indicative.**Imperfect.**Subjunctive.***ich wurde** (or *ward*), I became, *or* grew.du **wurdest** (or *wardst*), thou becamest.er **wurde** (or *ward*), he became.wir **wurden**, we became.ihr **wurdet**, you became.sie **wurden**, they became.**ich würde**, I became, *or* grew.du **würdest**, thou becamest.er **würde**, he became.wir **würden**, we became.ihr **würdet**, you became.sie **würden**, they became.*Perfect.***ich bin geworden**, I have become.du **bist geworden**, thou hast become.

etc. etc.

ich sei geworden, I have become.du **seiest geworden**, thou hast become.

etc. etc.

*Pluperfect.***ich war geworden**, I had become.du **warst geworden**, thou hadst become.

etc. etc.

ich wäre geworden, I had become.du **wärest geworden**, thou hadst become.

etc. etc.

*First Future.***ich werde werden**, I shall become.du **wirst werden**, thou wilt become.

etc. etc.

ich werde werden, I shall become.du **werdest werden**, thou wilt become.

etc. etc.

*Second Future.***ich werde geworden sein**, I shall have become.du **wirst geworden sein**, thou wilt have become.

etc. etc.

ich werde geworden sein, I shall have become.du **werdest geworden sein**, thou wilt have become.

etc. etc.

*First Conditional.***ich würde werden**, I should become.du **würdest werden**, thou wouldst become.

etc. etc.

*Second Conditional.***ich würde geworden sein**, I should have become.du **würdest geworden sein**, thou wouldst have become.

etc. etc.

Imperative.

werde, become (thou).
werde er, let him become.

werden wir, let us become.
werdet, become (ye), **werden sie**,
 let them become.

§ 78.

3. **Haben**, to have.*Infinitives.*

Present, **haben**, to have.
 Past, **gehabt haben**, to have had.

Participles.

Present, **habend**, having.
 Past, **gehabt**, had.

Indicative.

ich habe, I have.
 du **hast**, thou hast.
 er **hat**, he has.
 wir **haben**, we have.
 ihr **habt**, you have.
 sie **haben**, they have.

Present.

Subjunctive.

ich habe, I have.
 du **habeſt**, thou hast.
 er **habe**, he has.
 wir **haben**, we have.
 ihr **habet**, you have.
 sie **haben**, they have.

Imperfect.

ich hatte, I had.
 du **hattest**, thou hadst.
 er **hatte**, he had.
 wir **hatten**, we had.
 ihr **hattet**, you had.
 sie **hatten**, they had.

ich hätte, I had.
 du **hättest**, thou hadst.
 er **hätte**, he had.
 wir **hätten**, we had.
 ihr **hättet**, you had.
 sie **hätten**, they had.

Perfect.

ich habe gehabt, I have had.
 du **hast gehabt**, thou hast had.
 etc. etc.

ich habe gehabt, I have had.
 du **habeſt gehabt**, thou hast had.
 etc. etc.

Pluperfect.

ich hatte gehabt, I had had.
 du **hattest gehabt**, thou hadst had.
 etc. etc.

ich hätte gehabt, I had had.
 du **hättest gehabt**, thou hadst had.
 etc. etc.

First Future.

ich werde haben, I shall have.
 du **wirſt haben**, thou wilt have.
 etc. etc.

ich werde haben, I shall have.
 du **werdeſt haben**, thou wilt have.
 etc. etc.

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Second Future.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
ich werde gehabt haben , I shall have had.	ich werde gehabt haben , I shall have had.	
du wirst gehabt haben , thou wilt have had.	du werdest gehabt haben , thou wilt have had.	
etc. etc.	etc. etc.	

<i>First Conditional.</i>	<i>Second Conditional.</i>
ich würde haben , I should have.	ich würde gehabt haben , I should have had.
du würdest haben , thou wouldst have.	du würdest gehabt haben , thou wouldst have had.
etc. etc.	etc. etc.

Imperative.

habe , have (thou).	haben wir , let us have.
habe er , let him have.	habet (habt), have ye.
	haben sie , let them have.

2. *The Conjugation of the Weak Verb.*

(The modern form of conjugation.)

§ 79. The Formation of the Perfect and Pluperfect.

(See § 75, G.)

A. **Haben** is used—

1. With all Transitive, Reflective, and originally Impersonal Verbs.
2. With Intransitive Verbs governing the Genitive or Dative:

Er hat seiner gespottet, he has mocked at him.

Sie hat mir gedankt, she has thanked me.

Exceptions.—The following are conjugated with *sein*: *begegnen*, to meet; *folgen*, to follow; *gelingen*, to succeed; *glücken*, to prosper; *mißlingen*, to fail; *weichen*, to yield. Also such Intransitive Verbs as denote a *movement* from or towards a place or object; as—*entgehen*, to escape, to get off; *entlaufen*, to run away; etc. Thus we say: **Er ist seinem Freunde begegnet**, **gefolgt**, **gewichen**, **entlaufen**.

3. With many Intransitive Verbs denoting Action, a lasting State, or Sensation of the Subject; as—

Ich habe gearbeitet, I have worked (Action).

Ich habe geschlafen, I have slept (lasting State).

Ich habe gezittert, I have trembled (Sensation).

4. Also with Intransitive Verbs expressing a Motion without reference to place, if we wish to direct attention more to the Action expressed by the verb, than to anything else; as—

Ich habe gelaufen, I have been running.

Exception.—**Gehen**, to go, is always constructed with **sein**; as—

Ich **bin** gegangen, I have been walking (not riding).

Er **ist** heute in die Stadt gegangen, he has gone to town to-day.

B. **Sein** is used—

Especially with Intransitive Verbs denoting a Passive State of the subject, a change from one State into another, or a Motion, if the *place* to which the motion is directed, or from which it has proceeded, is *either expressed or understood*; as—

(a) Das Kind **ist** gefallen, the child has fallen (Passive State).

(b) Der alte Herr **ist** entschlafen, the old gentleman has died (Change of State).

(c) Er **ist** nach London gereist, he has gone to London (Motion where place is expressed).

C. Some verbs may be conjugated *with either haben or sein*. With **haben** they become **active**, with **sein** **passive**; as—

Ich habe gefahren, I have driven (Active, I have acted the coachman).

Ich **bin** gefahren, I have driven (Passive, I have been driven by somebody else).

Again, **haben** is used when *Manner or Time*, **sein** when *Locality or Space*, is expressed; as—

Haben: Ich habe lange geritten, I have had a long ride.

Ich habe langsam geritten, I have ridden slowly.

Sein: Ich **bin** nach Berlin geritten, I have ridden to Berlin (i.e. on horseback).

Ich **bin** heute 10 Meilen geritten und 10 Meilen gegangen, to-day I have been riding 10 miles and walking 10 miles.

§ 80.

The Imperative.

There is a proper Imperative form only for the second person singular and plural. The third person is expressed by the third person Present Subjunctive: er lobe, or lobe er, loben sie (Sie).

The Imperative of the third person may also be expressed by *ſollen* (§ 89):

Er ſoll arbeiten, ſie ſollen ſchreiben, he must work, they must write.

For the first person *wollen* may be used as an expression of either a will, or a wish (§ 88):

Ich will leſen, I will read, I wish to read.

Wir wollen arbeiten, we wish to work.

Also *laſſen* may be used (§ 94):

Laſſet uns leſen, laſſet uns arbeiten, let us read, let us work.

Laſſet uns rechnen, let us do some sums.

Laſſen Sie uns ſchreiben, let us write.

§ 81. Model of a Weak Verb conjugated with *haben*, and admitting the dropping of *e* before *ſt* and *t* (§ 75. F).

(a) ACTIVE VOICE.

Infinitives.

Participles.

Present, *lieben*, to love.

Present, *liebend*, loving.

Past, *geliebt haben*, to have loved.

Past, *geliebt*, loved.

Indicative.

Present.

Subjunctive.

ich liebe, I love.
du liebst, thou lovest.
er liebt, he loves.
wir lieben, we love.
ihr liebt, you love.
ſie lieben, they love.

ich liebe, I love.
du liebest, thou lovest.
er liebe, he loves.
wir lieben, we love.
ihr liebet, you love.
ſie lieben, they love.

Imperfect.

ich liebte, I loved.
du liebtest, thou lovedst.
er liebte, he loved.
wir liebten, we loved.
ihr liebtet, you loved.
ſie liebten, they loved.

ich lieb(e)te*, I loved.
du lieb(e)test, thou lovedst.
er lieb(e)te, he loved.
wir lieb(e)ten, we loved.
ihr lieb(e)tet, you loved.
ſie lieb(e)ten, they loved.

Perfect.

ich habe geliebt, I have loved.
du haſt geliebt, thou haſt loved.
etc. etc.

ich habe geliebt, I have loved.
du habest geliebt, thou haſt loved.
etc. etc.

* The *e* enclosed in brackets is now generally dropped.

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
ich hatte geliebt , I had loved. etc. etc.		ich hätte geliebt , I had loved. etc. etc.

First Future.

ich werde lieben , I shall love.	ich werde lieben , I shall love.
du wirst lieben , thou wilt love. etc. etc.	du werdest lieben , thou wilt love. etc. etc.

Second Future.

ich werde geliebt haben , I shall have loved.	ich werde geliebt haben , I shall have loved.
du wirst geliebt haben , thou wilt have loved. etc. etc.	du werdest geliebt haben , thou wilt have loved. etc. etc.

First Conditional.

ich würde lieben , I should love. etc. etc.

Second Conditional.

ich würde geliebt haben , I should have loved. etc. etc.

Imperative.

liebe (du), love (thou).	lieben wir, let us love.
liebe er, let him love.	liebet (ihr), love (ye).
	lieben sie, let them love.

Conjugate in the same way: loben, to praise; kaufen, to buy; spielen, to play.

§ 82.

(b) PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Infinitives.</i>	<i>Participle.</i>
Present, geliebt werden , to be loved.	
Past, geliebt worden sein , to have been loved.	Past, geliebt , loved.

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
ich werde geliebt , I am loved.	ich werde geliebt , I am loved.	
du wirst geliebt , thou art loved. etc. etc.	du werdest geliebt , thou art loved. etc. etc.	

Imperfect.

ich wurde geliebt , I was loved. etc. etc.	ich würde geliebt , I was loved. etc. etc.
--	--

*Indicative.**Perfect.**Subjunctive.*

ich bin geliebt worden , I have been loved (§ 77, note). etc. etc.	ich sei geliebt worden , I have been loved. etc. etc.
--	---

Pluperfect.

ich war geliebt worden , I had been loved. etc. etc.	ich wäre geliebt worden , I had been loved. etc. etc.
--	---

First Future.

ich werde geliebt werden , I shall be loved. etc. etc.	ich werde geliebt werden , I shall be loved. etc. etc.
--	--

Second Future.

ich werde geliebt worden sein , I shall have been loved. du wirst geliebt worden sein , thou wilt have been loved. etc. etc.	ich werde geliebt worden sein , I shall have been loved. du werdest geliebt worden sein , thou wilt have been loved. etc. etc.
--	--

*First Conditional.**Second Conditional.*

ich würde geliebt werden , I should be loved. etc. etc.	ich würde geliebt worden sein , I should have been loved. etc. etc.
---	---

Imperative.

werde (du) geliebt , be (thou) loved. werde er geliebt , let him be loved.	werden wir geliebt , let us be loved. werdet (ihr) geliebt , be (ye) loved. werden sie geliebt , let them be loved.
---	--

NOTE.—The Passive Voice must always be used when the *subject* is suffering the action expressed by the verb; as—

Der König wurde von seinem Volke mit Jubel empfangen.	The king was received with enthusiasm by his people.
---	--

§ 83. Model of an Intransitive Verb conjugated with *sein*, and not admitting the dropping of *e* before *st* and *t* (§ 75, F').

*Infinitives.**Participles.*

Present, landen , to land.	Present, landend , landing.
Past, gelandet sein , to have landed.	Past, gelandet , landed.

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
ich lande, I land.	ich lande, I land.	
du landest, thou landest.	du landest, thou landest.	
er landet, he lands.	er lande, he lands.	
wir landen, we land.	wir landen, we land.	
ihr landet, you land.	ihr landet, you land.	
sie landen, they land.	sie landen, they land.	

Imperfect.

ich landete, I landed.	ich landete, I landed.
du landetest, thou landedst.	du landetest, thou landedst.
er landete, he landed.	er landete, he landed.
wir landeten, we landed.	wir landeten, we landed.
ihr landet, you landed.	ihr landet, you landed.
sie landeten, they landed.	sie landeten, they landed.

Perfect.

ich bin, du bist, er ist gelandet, I have landed.	ich sei, du seist, er sei gelandet, I have landed.
etc. etc.	etc. etc.

Pluperfect.

ich war gelandet, I had landed.	ich wäre gelandet, I had landed.
etc. etc.	etc. etc.

First Future.

ich werde landen, I shall land.	ich werde landen, I shall land.
etc. etc.	etc. etc.

Second Future.

ich werde gelandet sein, I shall have landed.	ich werde gelandet sein, I shall have landed.
etc. etc.	etc. etc.

First Conditional.

ich würde landen, I should land.
etc. etc.

Second Conditional.

ich würde gelandet sein, I should have landed.
etc. etc.

Imperative.

lande, land (thou).	landen wir, let us land.
lande er, let him land.	landet, land (ye).
	landen sie, let them land.

§ 84. Verbs ending in *eln* and *ern*.

Verbs ending in *eln* and *ern* drop the *e* of the stem (that is *e* before *l* and *r* of *eln* and *ern*) in the first person singular of the Present Indicative, and the second person singular of the Imperative. In the Present of the Subjunctive the *e* of the stem should be retained, as in the table below, but is often dropped; as—*ich segle, du seglest, er segle*. The vowel *e* of the inflections *est, et, and en* is elided whenever euphony admits of it. The following table will make this clear.

MODELS.

Infinitive, <i>segeln</i> , to sail (stem <i>segel</i>).	<i>rudern</i> , to row (stem <i>ruder</i>).
Present Participle, <i>segelnd</i> .	<i>rudend</i> .
Past Participle, <i>geseget</i> .	<i>gerudert</i> .

<i>Indicative.</i>			<i>Present.</i>		<i>Subjunctive.</i>	
<i>ich</i>	<i>segle,</i>	<i>rudre.</i>	<i>ich</i>	<i>segelē,</i>	<i>rudere.</i>	
<i>du</i>	<i>segelst,</i>	<i>ruderst.</i>	<i>du</i>	<i>segelēst,</i>	<i>rudereſt.</i>	
<i>er</i>	<i>segelt,</i>	<i>rudert.</i>	<i>er</i>	<i>segelē,</i>	<i>rudere.</i>	
<i>wir</i>	<i>segeln,</i>	<i>rudern.</i>	<i>wir</i>	<i>segelēn,</i>	<i>ruderen.</i>	
<i>ihr</i>	<i>segelt,</i>	<i>rudert.</i>	<i>ihr</i>	<i>segelēt,</i>	<i>ruderet.</i>	
<i>sie</i>	<i>segeln,</i>	<i>rudern.</i>	<i>sie</i>	<i>segelēn,</i>	<i>ruderen.</i>	

Imperfect.

<i>ich</i>	<i>segelte,</i>	<i>ruderte.</i>	<i>ich</i>	<i>segelte,</i>	<i>ruderte.</i>
<i>du</i>	<i>segeltest,</i>	<i>rudertest.</i>	<i>du</i>	<i>segeltest,</i>	<i>rudertest.</i>
<i>er</i>	<i>segelte,</i>	<i>ruderte.</i>	<i>er</i>	<i>segelte,</i>	<i>ruderte.</i>
<i>wir</i>	<i>segelten,</i>	<i>ruderten.</i>	<i>wir</i>	<i>segelten,</i>	<i>ruderten.</i>
<i>ihr</i>	<i>segeltet,</i>	<i>rudertet.</i>	<i>ihr</i>	<i>segeltet,</i>	<i>rudertet.</i>
<i>sie</i>	<i>segelten,</i>	<i>ruderten.</i>	<i>sie</i>	<i>segelten,</i>	<i>ruderten.</i>

Imperative.

Second person singular, *segle, rudre*. Second person plural, *segelt, rudert*.

Conjugate after these models: tabeln, to blame; spiegeln, to reflect, to shine; sammeln, to gather; wundern, to wonder, to be astonished; ändern, to change.

3. *Reflective Verbs.*

§ 85. Model for the Conjugation of a Reflective Verb.

<i>Infinitives.</i>		<i>Participles.</i>	
Present, <i>sich freuen</i> , to rejoice.		Present, <i>sich freuend</i> , rejoicing.	
Past, <i>sich gefreut haben</i> , to have rejoiced.		Past, <i>sich gefreut habend</i> , having rejoiced.	

<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>
ich freue mich, I rejoice.	ich freue mich, I rejoice.	
du freust dich, thou rejoicest.	du freuest dich, thou rejoicest.	
er freut sich, he rejoices.	er freue sich, he rejoices.	
wir freuen uns, we rejoice.	wir freuen uns, we rejoice.	
ihr freut euch, you rejoice.	ihr freuet euch, you rejoice.	
sie freuen sich, they rejoice.	sie freuen sich, they rejoice.	

Imperfect.

ich freute mich, I rejoiced.	ich freute mich, I rejoiced.
etc. etc.	etc. etc.

Perfect.

ich habe mich gefreut, I have rejoiced.	ich habe mich gefreut, I have rejoiced.
du hast dich gefreut, thou hast rejoiced.	du habest dich gefreut, thou hast rejoiced.
er hat sich gefreut, he has rejoiced.	er habe sich gefreut, he has rejoiced.
wir haben uns gefreut, we have rejoiced.	wir haben uns gefreut, we have rejoiced.
ihr habt euch gefreut, you have rejoiced.	ihr habet euch gefreut, you have rejoiced.
sie haben sich gefreut, they have rejoiced.	sie haben sich gefreut, they have rejoiced.

Pluperfect—ich hatte mich gefreut, I had rejoiced.

First Future—ich werde mich freuen, I shall rejoice.

Second Future—ich werde mich gefreut haben, I shall have rejoiced.

First Conditional—ich würde mich freuen, I should rejoice.

Second Conditional—ich würde mich gefreut haben, I should have rejoiced.

Imperative—freue dich, er freue sich, freuen wir uns, freuet euch, freuen sie (Sie) sich.

§ 86. Besides the reflexive verbs, properly so called, *which always* require the objective pronoun in the Accusative, there are some verbs with a reflexive meaning, which require a pronoun in the *Dative-case*: ich schmeichle **mir**, I flatter myself; du bildest **dir** etwas ein, you fancy yourself something great; etc.

They are conjugated like the model above.

4. *Auxiliary Verbs of Mood.*

§ 87. There are seven verbs of mood:—

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>ich will</i> , I will, I am willing. | 4. <i>ich kann</i> , I can, I am able. |
| 2. <i>ich soll</i> , I shall, I am to, I am ordered. | 5. <i>ich mag</i> , I may, I like. |
| 3. <i>ich muß</i> , I must, I am obliged. | 6. <i>ich darf</i> , I dare, I am allowed. |
| | 7. <i>ich lasse</i> , I let, I make, I order. |

The auxiliary verbs of mood do not in themselves express action, but are used to give certain *modifications* to other verbs. The *verb* thus modified by them is always put in the *Infinitive*. They have the peculiarity of requiring the **Infinitive Present** instead of the *Past Participle* when the compound tense is used with an *infinitive of another verb*:

- (a) *Ich habe ihn rufen lassen* (not *gelassen*). I have ordered him to be called.
 (b) *Wir haben sie hören müssen* (not *genußt*). We have been obliged to hear them (to listen to them).

But when the *Infinitive* of the *governed verb* is understood and the *verb of mood* is used alone, the *Past Participle* is used in the ordinary way:

- Warum hast du deine Aufgabe nicht gemacht?* Why have you not done your exercise?
Ich habe nicht gekonnt. I was not able to (that is, not able to do it).

The use of these verbs will be best understood from the student's practical work, but in the Appendix (§§ 68–74) many illustrations of their various meanings are given. The auxiliary verbs of mood are defective in English, and have no regular *Infinitive*.

§ 88. 1. *Ich will*, I will, I am willing. *Infinitive: wollen.*

Present Indicative—*ich will*, du *willst*, er *will*, wir *wollen*, ihr *wollt*, sie *wollen*.

Present Subjunctive—*ich wolle*, du *wollest*, er *wolle*, wir *wollen*, ihr *wollt*, sie *wollen*.

Imperfect Indicative—*ich wollte*. *Subjunctive*—*ich wollte*.

Perfect Indicative—*ich habe gewollt*. *Subjunctive*—*ich habe gewollt*.

Pluperfect Indicative—*ich hatte gewollt*. *Subjunctive*—*ich hätte gewollt*.

First Future—*ich werde wollen*. *Second Future*—*ich werde gewollt haben*.

First Conditional—*ich würde wollen*. *Second Conditional*—*ich würde gewollt haben*.

§ 89. 2. **ich soll, I shall, I am to, I am ordered.** Infinitive: **sollen.**

Present Indicative—ich **soll**, du **sollst**, er **soll**, wir **sollen**, ihr **sollt**, sie **sollen**.

Present Subjunctive—ich **solle**, du **sollest**, er **solle**, wir **sollen**, ihr **sollt**, sie **sollen**.

Imperfect Indicative—ich **sollte**. *Subjunctive*—ich **sollte**.

Perfect Indicative—ich **habe gesollt**. *Subjunctive*—ich **habe gesollt**.

Pluperfect Indicative—ich **hatte gesollt**. *Subjunctive*—ich **hätte gesollt**.

First Future Indicative—ich **werde sollen**. *Subjunctive*—ich **werde sollen**.

Second Future Indicative—ich **werde gesollt haben**. *Subjunctive*—ich **werde gesollt haben**.

First Conditional—ich **würde sollen**. *Second Conditional*—ich **würde gesollt haben**.

§ 90. 3. **ich muß, I must, I am obliged.** Infinitive: **müssen.**

Present Indicative—ich **muß**, du **mußt**, er **muß**, wir **müssen**, ihr **müßt**, sie **müssen**.

Present Subjunctive—ich **müsse**, du **müßest**, er **müsse**, wir **müssen**, ihr **müßet**, sie **müssen**.

Imperfect Indicative—ich **mußte**, du **mußtetest**, er **mußte**, wir **mußten**, ihr **mußtet**, sie **mußten**.

Imperfect Subjunctive—ich **müßte**, du **müßtest**, er **müßte**, wir **müßten**, ihr **müßtet**, sie **müßten**.

Perfect Indicative—ich **habe gemußt**. *Subjunctive*—ich **habe gemußt**.

Pluperfect Indicative—ich **hatte gemußt**. *Subjunctive*—ich **hätte gemußt**.

First Future Indicative—ich **werde müssen**. *Subjunctive*—ich **werde müssen**.

Second Future Indicative—ich **werde gemußt haben**. *Subjunctive*—ich **werde gemußt haben**.

First Conditional—ich **würde müssen**. *Second Conditional*—ich **würde gemußt haben**.

§ 91. 4. **ich kann, I can, I am able, I may.** Infinitive: **können.**

Present Indicative—ich **kann**, du **kannst**, er **kann**, wir **können**, ihr **könnt**, sie **können**.

Present Subjunctive—ich **könne**, du **könnest**, er **könne**, wir **können**, ihr **könnet**, sie **können**.

Imperfect Indicative—ich **könnte**, du **könntest**, er **könnte**, wir **könnten**, ihr **könntet**, sie **könnten**.

Imperfect Subjunctive—ich **könnte**, du **könntest**, er **könnte**, wir **könnten**, ihr **könntet**, sie **könnten**.

Perfect Indicative—ich habe **gekonnt**. *Subjunctive*—ich habe **gekonnt**.

Pluperfect Indicative—ich hatte **gekonnt**. *Subjunctive*—ich hätte **gekonnt**.

First Future Indicative—ich werde **können**. *Subjunctive*—ich werde **können**.

Second Future Indicative—ich werde **gekonnt** haben. *Subjunctive*—ich werde **gekonnt** haben.

First Conditional—ich würde **können**. *Second Conditional*—ich würde **gekonnt** haben.

§ 92. 5. **ich mag**, *I may, I like*. Infinitive: **mögen**.

Present Indicative—ich **mag**, du **magst**, er **mag**, wir **mögen**, ihr **mögt**, sie **mögen**.

Present Subjunctive—ich **möge**, du **mögest**, er **möge**, wir **mögen**, ihr **möget**, sie **mögen**.

Imperfect Indicative—ich **mochte**. *Subjunctive*—ich **möchte**.

Perfect Indicative—ich habe **gemocht**. *Subjunctive*—ich habe **gemocht**.

Pluperfect Indicative—ich hatte **gemocht**. *Subjunctive*—ich hätte **gemocht**.

First Future Indicative—ich werde **mögen**. *Subjunctive*—ich werde **mögen**.

Second Future Indicative—ich werde **gemocht** haben. *Subjunctive*—ich werde **gemocht** haben.

First Conditional—ich würde **mögen**. *Second Conditional*—ich würde **gemocht** haben.

§ 93. 6. **ich darf**, *I dare, I am allowed, I may*.

Infinitive: **dürfen**.

Present Indicative—ich **darf**, du **darfst**, er **darf**, wir **dürfen**, ihr **dürft**, sie **dürfen**.

Present Subjunctive—ich **dürfe**, du **dürfest**, er **dürfe**, wir **dürfen**, ihr **dürfet**, sie **dürfen**.

Imperfect Indicative—ich **durfte**. *Subjunctive*—ich **dürfte**.

Perfect Indicative—ich habe **gedurft**. *Subjunctive*—ich habe **gedurft**.

Pluperfect Indicative—ich hatte **gedurft**. *Subjunctive*—ich hätte **gedurft**.

First Future Indicative—ich werde **dürfen**. *Subjunctive*—ich werde **dürfen**.

Second Future Indicative—ich werde **gedurft** haben. *Subjunctive*—ich werde **gedurft** haben.

First Conditional—ich würde **dürfen**. *Second Conditional*—ich würde **gedurft** haben.

§ 94. 7. *ich lasse, I let, I make, I order.* Infinitive: *lassen*.

Present Indicative—*ich lasse, du läßt, er läßt, wir lassen, ihr laßt, sie lassen.*

Present Subjunctive—*ich lasse, du lassesst, er lasse, wir lassen, ihr lasset, sie lassen.*

Imperfect Indicative—*ich ließ.* *Subjunctive*—*ich liesse.*

Perfect Indicative—*ich habe gelassen.* *Subjunctive*—*ich habe gelassen.*

Pluperfect Indicative—*ich hatte gelassen.* *Subjunctive*—*ich hätte gelassen.*

First Future Indicative—*ich werde lassen.* *Subjunctive*—*ich werde lassen.*

Second Future Indicative—*ich werde gelassen haben.* *Subjunctive*—*ich werde gelassen haben.*

First Conditional—*ich würde lassen.* *Second Conditional*—*ich würde gelassen haben.*

5. *The Conjugation of Strong and Irregular Verbs.*

§ 95.

Strong Verbs.

The characteristic of these verbs has been stated in § 75, *D*. There is a considerable number of them, the prefixes and suffixes of which are the same as those of the weak verbs,—

Except: the first and third person singular of the Imperfect Indicative which have no suffix, and the Past Participle which requires *en* instead of *et*.

§ 96. *The Imperative.* Verbs changing, in the second and third person singular of the Present, the vowel *e* of the stem into *ie* or *i* do not take any suffix for the second person singular of the Imperative, which is only the stem thus changed:

Infinitive.	Present.	Imperative.
sehen.	ich sehe, du siehst, er sieht.	sieh.
brechen.	ich breche, du brichst, er bricht.	brich.

§ 97.

Models for Conjugating Strong Verbs.

reiten, to ride.	geben, to give.
<i>Infinitives.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
Present, reiten, geben.	Present, reitend, gebend.
Past, geritten haben, gegeben haben.	Past, geritten, gegeben.

<i>Indicative.</i>			<i>Present.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>		
ich	reite,	gebe.		ich	reite,	gebe.
du	reitest,	giebst.		du	reitest,	gebest.
er	reitet,	giebt.		er	reite,	gebe.
wir	reiten,	geben.		wir	reiten,	geben.
ihr	reitet,	gebt.		ihr	reitet,	gebet.
sie	reiten,	geben.		sie	reiten,	geben.

Imperfect.

ich	ritt,	gab.	ich	ritte,	gäbe.
du	rittest,	gabst.	du	rittest,	gäbest.
er	ritt,	gab.	er	ritte,	gäbe.
wir	ritten,	gaben.	wir	ritten,	gäben.
ihr	rittet,	gabt.	ihr	rittet,	gäbet.
sie	ritten,	gaben.	sie	ritten,	gäben.

Perfect.

ich bin (or habe) geritten (see § 79, C).	ich sei (or habe) geritten (see § 79, C).
ich habe gegeben.	ich habe gegeben.

NOTE.—All compound tenses are formed like those of weak verbs.

Imperative.

reite, ride (thou); gieb , give (thou) (see § 96).	reiten wir, let us ride; geben wir, let us give.
er reite, let him ride; er gebe, let him give.	reitet, ride (ye); geb(e)t, give (ye).
	reiten sie, let them ride; geben sie, let them give.

§ 98.

Irregular Verbs.

Irregular verbs should be well distinguished from *strong* verbs. Whilst the latter are inflected by prefixes and suffixes, and, in certain forms, by a change of the vowel of the stem (§ 75, D), the former are subject to other irregularities besides, as will be seen from the sub-joined table, in which the irregular verbs are distinguished by an asterisk.

(The auxiliary verbs of tenses (§§ 76–78) and the auxiliary verbs of mood (§§ 87–94) are not included in the table.)

§ 99. TABLE FOR THE CONJUGATION OF STRONG AND IRREGULAR VERBS.

(Most derivatives are omitted from this list; they are conjugated like the primitive verbs from which they are derived. Verbs which change the vowel of the stem in the second and third person singular of the Present Indicative, resume the original vowel for the plural. The verbs marked * are irregular.)

INFINITIVE.	ENGLISH.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT		IMPERATIVE.	PARTICIPLE PAST.
			INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.		
I.						
baken	to bake	ich backe, du backst, er backt, wir backen	back (backte)	backe	backe	gebacken
bedingen	to contract	ich bedinge, du bedingst	bedung	bedünge	bedinge	bedungen
*bedürfen	to need	ich bedarf, du bedarfst, er bedarf	bedurfte	bedürfte		bedurft
befehlen	to command	ich befehle, du befehlst, er befehlet, wir befehlen	befahl	befähle	befiehl	befohlen
befleissen (sich)	to apply oneself	ich fleisse mich, du fleissest dich	besiß	besitze	besetze dich	besessen
beginnen	to begin	ich beginne, du beginnst, er beginnt	beginn	beginne	beginne	begonnen
beißen	to bite	ich beiße, du beißest, er beißt	biß	bißne	beiße	gebissen
bergen	to conceal	ich berge, du birgst, er birgt	berg	bürge	birg	geborgen
bersten	to burst	ich berste, du birdest, er birset, also du berstest, er berstet	berst	berste	birst, also berste	geborsten
besinnen (sich)	to recollect oneself	ich besinne mich, du besinnst dich	besann	besänne	besinne dich	besonnen
II.						
*besitzen	to possess	ich besitze, du besitzt	besaß	besäße	besitze	besessen
betrügen	to deceive	ich betrüge, du betrügst	betrog	beträge	betrüge	betrogen

bewegen	to induce	ich bewege, du bewegst (weak)	bewege	bevoege	bewege	bevoegen
"	to move	ich biele, du bielest	biege	böge	biege	gebogen
biegen	to bend	ich biete, du bietest	biete	böte	biete	geboren
binden	to offer	ich binde, du bindest	binde	kände	binde	gebunden
bitten	to bind	ich bitte, du bittest	bitte	käte	bitte	gebeten
blasen	to beg	ich blase, du blasest, er bläst	blase	kläse	blase	geblasen
bleiben	to blow	ich bleibe, du bleibst	bleibe	kläbe	bleibe	geblieben
bleichen	to remain	ich bleiche, du bleichst, er bleicht (weak)	bleiche	kläbe	bleiche	gebleichen
"	to fade					
III.	to bleach					
braten	to roast	ich brate, du brätst, er brät	brate	briete	brate	gebraten
brechen	to break	ich breche, du brichst, er bricht	bräche	bräche	brich	gebrochen
*brennen	to burn	ich brenne, du brennst	brenne	brenn(e)te	brenne	gebrannt
*bringen	to bring	ich bringe, du bringst	bringe	brächte	bringe	gebracht
*denken	to think	ich denke, du denkst	denke	dächte	denke	gedacht
dingen	to bargain	ich dinge, du dingst	dinge	dünge	dinge	gedungen
dröschén	to thrash	ich drösché, du dröschest, er dröschst	drösch	drätsche, or drösché	drösch	gedröschén
dringen	to urge	ich dringe, du dringst	dringe	dränge	dringe	gedrungen
empfangen	to receive	ich empfangé, du empfängst, er empfängt	empfang	empfinge	empfangé	empfangen
empfehlen	to recommend	ich empfehle, du empfiehst, er empfiehlt	empfehl	empfinde	empfehl	empfohlen
IV.	to feel	(see finden)				
empfinden	to correspond	(see sprechen)				
erblicken	to grow pale	ich erblicke, du erblickst	erblicke	erblicke	erblicke	erblickten
erfrieren	to freeze to death	(see frieren)				
erfüren	to choose	ich erfüre, du erfüllst	erfüre	erfüre	erfüre	erfüren

INFINITIVE.	ENGLISH.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT		IMPERATIVE.	PARTICIPLE PAST.
			INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.		
erlöſchen erſaufen erſchallen erſcheinen *erſchröcken "	to become extinct to be drowned to sound to appear to be frightened to frighten	ich erlöſche, du erlöſcheſt (see ſaufen) ich erſchalle, du erſchallſt (see ſcheinen) ich erſchröcke, du erſchröckſt, er erſchröckſt (weak)	erlöſch erſcholl erſchrak	erlöſche erſchölle erſchräke	erlöſch erſchalle erſchrück	erlöſchen erſchollen erſchröcken
V. ertrinken ernügen *eſſen fahren	to be drowned to conſider to eat to drive	(see trinken) ich ernüge, du ernügst, er ernügt ich eſſe, du iſſeſt, er iſſet or iſſet ich fahre, du fährſt, er fährt (with the exception of wiſſfahren, all deriva- tives of fahren are strong)	ernug aß fuhr	ernüge äße führe	ernüge iß fahre	ernügen gegeſſen gefahren
*fallen fangen ſechten	to fall to catch to fight	ich falle, du fälltſt, er fällt ich fange, du fängſt, er fängt ich ſechte, du ſechſt, er ſicht	fiel fang ſocht	fielle fänge ſöchte	ſalle ſange ſechte, or ſicht	gefallen gefangen geſochten
finden ſlechten	to find to twiſt	ich finde, du findeſt, er findet ich ſlechte, du ſlechſt, er ſicht	ſand ſlocht	ſände ſlöchte	finde ſlechte, or ſlicht	gefunden geſlochten
fliegen	to fly	ich fliege, du fliegſt	ſlog	flöge	fliege	gefliegen
VL. fliehen	to flee	ich fliehe, du fliehſt	ſob	flöbe	fliehe	geflohen

fließen fressen frieren	to flow to devour to be cold, to freeze	ich fließe, du fließest ich fresse, du frisstest, er frisst ich friere, du frierest	floß frap fror	flöße fräpe fröre	fließe frup friere	gessen gefressen gefroren
gähren gebären geben gebieten gedeihen gefallen	to ferment to bring forth to give to command to prosper to please	ich gähre, du gährst ich gebäre, du gebärst ich gebe, du gibst, er giebt (see bieten) ich gedeihe, du gedeihst (see fallen)	gohr gebar gab gedieh	göhre gebäre gäbe gediehe	gähre gebäre gieb gedeihe	gegohren geboren gegeben gediehen
*gehen gesingen gesten genießen genießen getathen gewinnen gießen gleichen	to go to succeed to be worth to recover to enjoy to come upon to happen to win to pour to be alike	ich gehe, du gehst (impersonal) es gesingt ich geste, du gilst, er gilt ich genieße, du genießest ich genieße, du genießest (see raten) (impersonal) es geschieht ich gewinne, du gewinnst ich gieße, du gießest, er gießt ich gleiche, du gleichst	ging es gelang galt genas genosß es geschah gewann goß glich	ginge es gelänge gälte genäse genosse es geschähe gewänne gösse gliche	gehe es gesinge gilt genesse genieße es geschehe gewinne gieße gleich	gegangen gesungen gesten genossen genossen geschehen gewonnen gegossen geglichen
*gleiten glimmen graben greifen halten	to slide to shine faintly to dig to seize to hold	ich gleite, du gleitest (begleiten is weak) ich glimme, du glimmst ich grabe, du grabst, er gräbt ich greife, du greiffst ich halte, du hältst, er hält	glitt glomm grab griff hielt	glitte glomme gräbe griffe hielte	gleite glimme grabe greife halte	geglichen geglimmen gegraben gegriffen gehalten

VII.

VIII.

INFINITIVE.	ENGLISH.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT		IMPERATIVE.	PARTICIPLE PAST.
			INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.		
hängen, intr. *hauen helen heßen helsen	to be suspended to hew to lift to be called to help	ich hänge, du hängst, er hängt ich hane, du haust ich hebe, du hebst ich heiße, du heissest, er heißt ich helse, du hilfst, er hilft	hing hieβ hob hieβ hals	hinge hiebe hobe hieße hälle	hänge hane hebe heisse hilf	gehungen gehauen gehoben geheßen gehelsen
IX. *heßen *fennen flinnen flingen *fneßen *fommen frießen laden laufen *leßen	to scold to know to climb to sound to pinch to come to creep to load to run to suffer	ich heisse, du heisst ich fenne, du fennst ich flimme, du flimmst ich flinge, du klingst ich fneisse, du fneisst ich fomme, du fommst ich friesse, du friest ich lade, du ladest ich laufe, du läufst, er läuft ich leide, du leidest, er leidet	fiß fante flomm flang fniff fann frosch lud ließ litt	fiße fenn(e) flomme flänge fneisse fomme frieße lade laufe leide	gefißen gefann geflommen geflungen gefneßen gefommen gefroßen geladen gelaufen geleitten	
X. leßen lesen siegen sugen	to lend to read to lie, to be situated to lie, to speak the untruth	ich leise, du leihst ich lese, du liest, er liest or liestet ich siege, du siegst ich süge, du sügst	lieh las lag log	liehe läse läge löge	leihe lies liege lüge	geleßen gelesen gelegen gelegen

*maßlen reiben messen messen *nehmen	to grind to avoid to milk to measure to take	ich maße, du maßtst ich reibe, du reibst ich messe, du messst ich messe, du messst, er misst ich nehme, du nimmst, er nimmt	maßte mied moll maß nahm	maß(e)te miede mölle mäße nähme	genießen genießen gemolken gemessen genommen
XI. *nennen *pfeifen pflegen	to name to whistle to have friendly in- tercourse with	ich nenne, du nennst ich pfeife, du pfeifst ich pflege, du pflegst (this verb is only strong when used with the nouns friendship and Umgang, and in the meaning of 'to have friendly intercourse with')	nannte pfiß pflog	nenn(e)te pfiße pfloge	genannt gepfiffen gepflogen
preisen quellen rauben reisen reisen *reiten *rennen	to extol to spring forth to advise to rub to tear to ride to run	ich preise, du preisst, er preist ich quelle, du quillst, er quillt ich raube, du räubst, er räubt ich reibe, du reibst ich reisse, du reißest, er reißt ich reite, du reitest, er reitet ich renne, du rennest, er rennt	preis quoll rieth rieb riß ritt rannte	preise quill raube reibe reisse reite renne	gepreisen gequollen gerauben gerieben gerissen geritten gerannt
XII. riechen ringen rinnen	to smell to wring to coagulate	ich rieche, du riechst ich ringe, du ringst ich rinne, du rinnt	roch rang rann	röche ränge ränne, or rönne	gerochen gerungen geronnen
rufen *salzen	to call to salt	ich rufe, du ruffst ich salze, du salzest, er salzt	rief salzte	riefe salz(e)te	gerufen gesalzen

INFINITIVE.	ENGLISH.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT		IMPERATIVE.	PARTICIPLE PAST.
			INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.		
*laufen laugen *schaffen	to drink (of beasts) to suck to create	ich laufe, du läufst, er läuft ich sauge, du saugst ich schaffe, du schaffst (weak in any other meaning but 'to create')	läuf sag schuf	läufe sage schufe	laufe saue schaffe	gelaufen gelogen geschaffen
schieden schinen	to separate to shine	ich scheide, du scheidest ich scheine, du scheinst	schied schie	schiede schiene	scheide schiene	geschieden geschienen
XIII. schelten scheren schieben schieken schinden schlafen schlagen	to scold to shear to shove to shoot to slay to sleep to beat	ich schelte, du schilst, er schilt ich schere, du schierst, er schiert ich schiebe, du schiebst ich schieße, er schießt ich schinde, du schindest ich schlafe, du schläfst, er schläft (rarely) ich schlage, du schlägst, er schlägt (rarely) schlagen und verathschlagen are weak)	schalt schor schob schoss schund schlief schlug	schälte schöre schöbe schöße schünde schliefe schlüge	schilt schier schiebe schieße schinde schläfe schlage	gescholten geschoren geschoben geschossen geschunden geschlafen geschlagen
schleichen *schleifen schleßen	to sneak to sharpen, to whet to shut	ich schleiche, du schleichst ich schleife, du schleiffst (in any other meaning weak) ich schleße, du schleießest	schlich schliff schloß	schliche schliffe schlosse	schleiche schleife schleße	geschlichen geschliffen geschlossen
XIV. schlingen schmeißen schmelzen	to twine to fling to melt	ich schlinge, du schlingst ich schmeiße, du schmeißest ich schmelze, du schmilzt, er schmilzt	schlang schmiß schmolz	schlänge schmisse schmolze	schlinge schmeiße schmilz	geschlungen geschmissen geschmolzen

schrauben *schneiden schrauben schreiben schreiten *schreiten schwären	to short, to breathe to cut to screw to write to cry to stride to fester	ich schraube, du schraubst ich schneide, du schneidest ich schraube, du schraubst ich schreibe, du schreibst ich schreie, du schreiest ich schreite, du schreitest ich schwäre, du schwärst	schraub schnitt schrob schrieb schrie schritt schwor	schünde schnitt schürbe schriebe schrie(e) schritte schwüre	schraube schneide schraube schreibe schreie schreite schwäre	geschraubt geschritten geschraubt geschrieben geschritten geschritten geschworen
XV. schweigen schwellen schwimmen	to be silent to swell to swim	ich schweige, du schweigst ich schwellen, du schwellst, er schwimmt ich schwimme, du schwimmst	schweig schwell schwamm	schweige schwölle schwämme	schweige schwell schwimme	geschwiegen geschwollen geschwommen
schwimmen schwimmen schwören sehen *senden *senden singen	to vanish to swing to swear to see to send to boil to sing	ich schwimme, du schwimmst ich schwinge, du schwingst ich schwöre, du schwörst ich sehe, du siehst, er sieht ich sende, du sendest ich koch, du kochst ich singe, du singst	schwam schwang schwor sah sandte kocht sang	schwände schwänge schwöre sähe sendete kottete sänge	schwimbe schwinge schwöre siehe sende siehe singe	geschwommen geschwungen geschworen gesehen geschickt gekocht gesungen
XVI. sinken sinnen *sitten *spalten speien spinnen sprechen	to sink to meditate to sit to split to spit to spin to speak	ich sinke, du sinkst ich sinne, du sinnst ich sitze, du sitzt, er sitzt ich spalte, du spaltest ich speie, du speiest ich spinne, du spinnt ich spreche, du sprichst, er spricht	sank sann saß spaltete spie spinn sprach	sänke sänne säße spaltete spie(e) spänne spräche	sänke sinne sitze spalte speie spinne sprich	gesunken gesonnen gesehen gespalten gespien gesponnen gesprochen

INFINITIVE.	ENGLISH.	PRESENT INDICATIVE.	IMPERFECT		IMPERATIVE.	PARTICIPLE PAST.
			INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.		
sprießen springen stechen XVII. *stehen stehen steigen sterben stehen stinken stoßen streichen *streiten *thun	to sprout to jump to sting to stand to steal to mount to die to fly like dust to stink to push to stroke, to spread to contend to do	ich sprieße, du spriestest ich springe, du springst ich steche, du steichst, er sticht ich stehe, du stehst, er steht ich stehle, du stielst, er stiehlt ich steige, du steigst ich sterbe, du stirbst, er stirbt ich stehe, du stichst ich stinke, du stinkst ich stoße, du stoßest, er stößt ich streiche, du streichst, er streicht ich streite, du streitest ich thue, du thuust, er thut	spröß sprang stach stand stahl stieg starb stob stank stieß stich tritt that	sprösse spränge stäche stände stahle stiege starbe stöbe stände stöße striehe stritte thäte	sprieße springe stich stehe stehle steige stirb stieb stinke stoße streiche strette thue	gesprossen gesprungen gestochen gestanden gestohlen gestiegen gestorben gestoben gestunken gestoßen gestrichen gestritten gethan
tragen *treffen treiben *treten *triefen tragen trinken verbergen	to carry to hit to drive to tread to drop to deceive to drink to conceal	ich trage, du trägst, er trägt ich treffe, du triffst, er trifft ich treibe, du treibst, er treibt ich trete, du trittst, er tritt ich triefe, du triefst, er trieft ich trüge, du trägst, er trägt ich trinke, du trinkst (see <i>bergen</i>)	trag traf trieb trat troff trog trank	trüge träfe triebe träte tröffe trüge tränke	trage triff treibe tritt triefe trüge trinke	getragen getroffen getrieben getreten getroffen getrunken

6. *Impersonal Verbs.*

§ 100: Impersonal Verbs are used only in the third person singular throughout; they have, however, an Infinitive-form:

es regnet, it rains.

es blizt, it lightens.

es donnert, it thunders.

es giebt, there is, there are.

Infinitives — regnen, donnern, blitzen, geben.

Conjugation of Impersonal Verbs.

§ 101.

1. *Schneien, to snow.**Indicative.*

Present—es schneit, it snows.

Imperfect—es schneite, it snowed.

Perfect—es hat geschneit, it has snowed.

Pluperfect—es hatte geschneit, it had snowed.

First Future—es wird schneien, it will snow.

Second Future—es wird geschneit haben, it will have snowed.

First Conditional—es würde schneien, it would snow.

Second Conditional—es würde geschneit haben, it would have snowed.

Subjunctive.

Present—daß es schneie, that it snows.

Imperfect—daß es schnei(e)te, that it snowed.

Perfect—daß es geschneit habe, that it has snowed.

Pluperfect—daß es geschneit hätte, that it had snowed.

First Future—daß es schneien werde, that it will snow.

Second Future—daß es geschneit haben werde, that it will have snowed.

§ 102.

2. *Es giebt, there is, there are.*

Present—es giebt, there is, there are (Subjunct. es gebe).

Imperfect—es gab, there was, there were (Subjunct. es gäbe).

Perfect—es hat gegeben, there has (have) been (Subjunct. es habe gegeben).

Pluperfect—es hatte gegeben, there had been (Subjunct. es hätte gegeben).

First Future—es wird geben, there will be (Subjunct. es werde geben).

Second Future—es wird gegeben haben, there will have been (Subjunct. es werde gegeben haben).

First Conditional—es würde geben, there would be.

Second Conditional—es würde gegeben haben, there would have been.

All impersonal verbs form their compound tenses with haben.

§ 103. *Es* *ist* is used in speaking of time and weather. Many verbs are used impersonally with a personal pronoun:

Es ist kalt, it is cold.

Es thut mir leid, I am sorry

Es ist spät, it is late.

for it.

Es freut mich, I am glad.

Es friert mich, I am cold.

7. Compound Verbs.

§ 104. There is a great number of verbs which allow of prefixes or particles being put before them. In the conjugation of such verbs *the prefix may be either separable or inseparable*. The *prefix* again may be *simple* or *compound*.

Accordingly we distinguish:

1. Simple Inseparable Prefixes.
2. Compound Inseparable Prefixes.
3. Simple Separable Prefixes.
4. Compound Separable Prefixes.
5. Prefixes both Separable and Inseparable.

1. Simple Inseparable Prefixes.

§ 105. There are eleven prefixes of this class; they are **unaccented, never separated** from the verb, and do **not admit** of the prefix **ge** in the *Past Participle*. They are:

be, emp, ent, er, ge, hinter, miß, ver, voll, wider, zer.

The student is requested to study carefully the signification of the prefixes as explained in the following paragraphs.

be (1) gives a **transitive** meaning to **intransitive** verbs: as—(weinen, to weep) *Ich beweine den Tod meines Freundes*, I weep over the death of my friend.

(2) *extends the action* expressed by the verb with respect to the *object*: as—(schreiben, to write) *Er hat dies Papier beschrieben*, he has covered this paper with writing.

(3) makes *transitive* verbs from *nouns* and *adjectives*: as—*Das Mit-leid*, compassion; *benitleiden*, to pity; *frei*, free; *befreien*, to liberate.

emp cannot be defined in its signification.

ent denotes—

(1) a **rising** from some object, place, or state: as—*entfließen*, to flow from; *entpringen*, to spring from.

- (2) **separation**: as—**entreißen**, to snatch from; **entführen**, to carry off.
 (3) **negation, privation**: as—**entkleiden**, to deprive of clothing, to undress; **entwenden**, to take away.

er denotes—

- (1) **obtaining, getting, completing**, both for subject and object: as—

Dieser Knabe **erbetzelt** sein Brod This boy obtains his bread by
 (betteln, to beg). begging.

Der Lehrer **erklärt** die Regel (klären, to clear). The master explains the rule.

- (2) **progress and improvement towards a state**: as—Der Kranke **erstarft** sichtlich, the sick man is visibly gaining strength (stark, adj. strong).

ge appears not to affect the signification when prefixed to verbs: as—**gedenken**, to think, from **denken**, to think.

hinter means **behind, back, hind, after**, etc.: as—**hinterlassen**, to leave behind.

miß denotes **wrong, ill**; it corresponds to the English *mis, dis, ill*: as—**mißhandeln**, to treat badly; **mißdeuten**, to misinterpret.

ver denotes—

- (1) **loss, parting with**, and has often the meaning of *away*: as—**verspielen**, to lose by gambling; **verfaufen**, to sell (from **spielen**, to play, and **kaufen**, to buy).

- (2) **gradual destruction, decay, declining**: as—**verblühen**, to fade away; **verfallen**, to decay (from **blühen**, to bloom, and **fallen**, to fall).

- (3) **wrong, mistake**: as—**sich vergreifen**, to make a mistake, to seize or grasp wrong, to mistake in seizing (from **greifen**, to seize); **sich verschreiben**, to write wrongly, to make a mistake in writing (from **schreiben**, to write).

- (4) **union**: as—**verbinden**, to unite; **verbrüdern**, to unite into a brotherhood (from **binden**, to bind, and **Brüder**, brethren).

voll denotes **accomplishment**: as—**vollbringen**, to accomplish.

wider denotes **opposition, contradiction**, and corresponds to the English *gain, against*: as—**widersetzen**, to oppose (from **setzen**, to set); **widersprechen**, to gainsay (from **sprechen**, to speak, to say).

zer denotes **dissolution and destruction**: as—**zerbrechen**, to break to pieces; **zerfallen**, to fall to pieces.

2. Compound Inseparable Prefixes.

§ 106. Some of the prefixes given in paragraph 105 can be placed before nouns and verbs with other prefixes, and thus form verbs with compound inseparable prefixes.

Examples of Verbs Compounded with Compound Inseparable Prefixes.

<i>Inseparable Prefixes.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>English.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
bean',	bean'sprechen,	to demand,	ich bean'sprachete,	bean'sprucht.
brant',	brant'worten,	to answer,	ich brant'wortete,	brant'wortet.
benach',	benach'theiligen,	to injure,	ich benach'theiligte,	benach'theiligt.
benn',	benn'ruhigen,	to disturb,	ich benn'ruhigte,	benn'ruhigt.
beur',	beur'lauben,	to give leave,	ich beur'laubte,	beur'laubt.
miß'ver,	miß'verstehen,	to misunderstand,	ich miß'verstand,	miß'verstanden.
verab',	verab'schieden,	to give leave,	ich verab'schiedete,	verab'schiedet.
verant',	verant'worten,	to answer for,	ich verant'wortete,	verant'wortet.
vernach',	vernach'lässigen,	to neglect,	ich vernach'lässigte,	vernach'lässig.
verun',	verun'glücken,	to meet with misfortune,	ich verun'glückte,	verun'glückt.
verur',	verur'theilen,	to condemn,	ich verur'theilte,	verur'theilt.

3. Simple Separable Prefixes.

§ 107. The separable prefixes consist mostly of prepositions and adverbs. In the Present and Imperfect, and in the Imperative Mood, these prefixes are separated from the verb and put at the end of the clause; but in subordinate clauses, beginning with a relative pronoun or a subordinate conjunction (see § 124), no separation takes place.

In the *Past Participle* the *ge* is put *between the particle and the verb*.

Also in the *Infinitive* the particle *zu*, when required, takes the same place.

The *accent* of compound separable verbs is *twofold*; firstly *on the separable particle*, and secondly *on the verb*.

Examples.

Er hört mir stets aufmerksam zu.	He always listens attentively to me.
Hört mir zu, Kinder!	Listen to me, children!
Wenn ihr mir zuhört, etc.	If you listen to me, etc.

§ 108. Conjugation of a Verb with a Simple Separable Prefix.

Zu'hören, to listen.*Infinitives.**Participles.*

Present, zu'hören, to listen.

Present, zu'hörend, listening.

Past, zu'gehört haben, to have listened.

Past, zu'gehört, listened.

*Indicative.***Present.***Subjunctive.*

ich höre zu, I listen.

ich höre zu, I listen.

du hörst zu, thou listenest.

du hörst zu, thou listenest.

er hört zu, he listens.

er höre zu, he listens.

wir hören zu, we listen.

wir hören zu, we listen.

ihr hört zu, you listen.

ihr höret zu, you listen.

ſie hören zu, they listen.

ſie hören zu, they listen.

Imperfect.

ich hörte zu, I listened.

ich hörte zu, I listened.

du hörteſt zu, thou listenedst.

du hörteſt zu, thou listenedst.

er hörte zu, he listened.

er hörte zu, he listened.

etc. etc.

etc. etc.

Perfect.

ich habe zu'gehört, I have listened.

ich habe zu'gehört, I have listened.

etc. etc.

etc. etc.

Pluperfect.

ich hatte zu'gehört, I had listened.

ich hätte zu'gehört, I had listened.

etc. etc.

etc. etc.

First Future.

ich werde zu'hören, I shall listen.

ich werde zu'hören, I shall listen.

etc. etc.

etc. etc.

Second Future.

ich werde zu'gehört haben, I shall

ich werde zu'gehört haben, I shall

have listened.

have listened.

etc. etc.

etc. etc.

First Conditional.**Second Conditional.**

ich würde zu'hören, I should listen.

ich würde zu'gehört haben, I should

have listened.

etc. etc.

etc. etc.

Imperative.

höre zu, listen (thou).

höret zu, listen (ye).

List of Simple Separable Particles with Verbs.

§ 109.

PARTICLES.	COMPOUND VERBS.	SIMPLE VERBS.
a b (off)	a b' schreiben	schreiben
a n (on)	a n' nehmen	nehmen
a u f (up)	a u f' stehen	stehen
a u s s (out)	a u s s' lassen	lassen
b e i (by)	b e i' tragen	tragen
d a, d a r (there)	d a r' reichen	reichen
e i n (in)	e i n' stellen	stellen
e m p o r (up)	e m p o r' steigen	steigen
f o r t (forth, away, on)	f o r t' bauern	bauern
h e r (hither)	h e r' bringen	bringen
h e i m (home)	h e i m' gehen	gehen
h i n (thither)	h i n' gehen	gehen
l o s (loose, off)	l o s' gehen	gehen
m i t (with)	m i t' nehmen	nehmen
n a c h (after)	n a c h' folgen	folgen
n i e d e r (down)	n i e d e r' legen	legen
ü b r i g (left over)	ü b r i g' bleiben	bleiben
u m (round)	u m' fahren	fahren
v o r (before)	v o r' kommen	kommen
w e g (away)	w e g' nehmen	nehmen
w i e d e r (back, again)	w i e d e r' fahren	fahren
z u (to, at, too)	z u' nehmen	nehmen
z u r ü c k (back)	z u r ü c k' kommen	kommen
z u s a m m e n (together)	z u s a m m e n' nehmen	nehmen

4. Compound Separable Particles.

They are treated like *simple separable particles*.

List of Compound Separable Particles with Verbs.

PARTICLES.	COMPOUND VERBS.		SIMPLE VERBS.	
aufrecht (upright)	aufrechtgehen	to go upright	gehen	to go
dabei (thereby, by it)	dabei bleiben	to persist in	bleiben	to remain
dabei (thence, along)	dahergehen	to walk along	gehen	to go
dahin (thither, along away)	dahin gehen	to send thither	gehen	to send
darnieder (on the ground, down)	darnieder liegen	to lay down	liegen	to lay
daran (thereat, at it, near it)	daran kommen	to come to it	kommen	to come
darauf (thereon, thereupon, upon it)	darauf kommen	to remember	kommen	to come
davon (thereof, therefrom, of that, of it, off, away)	davon laufen	to run away	laufen	to run
davor (before, before that, before it)	davor stehen	to put before	stehen	to put
dazu (thereto, to it)	dazu thun	to add	thun	to do
dazwischen (there between, between it)	dazwischen gehen	to interrupt	gehen	to speak
einander (along, about)	einander gehen	to walk along	gehen	to go, to walk
entgegen (towards, against)	entgegen gehen	to go to meet	gehen	to go
entzwei (in twain, asunder, in two)	entzwei fallen	to fall in pieces	fallen	to fall

herab' (down, towards you)	herabgehen	} to descend to lead on to ascend	gehen	to go
hinab' (down, from you)	hinabgehen		föhren	to lead
heran' (on, towards you)	heranführen		fteigen	to mount
herauf' (up, towards you)	herauffteigen	} to come out to come in to go over	fommen	to come
hinauf' (up, from you)	hinauf' (out, towards you)		fommen	to come
hinaus' (out, from you)	hinein' (in, towards you)		gehen	to go
herüber' (over, towards you)	hinüber' (in, from you)	} to go down to call to the spot to go about to draw forth to neglect to go away to add to agree to travel about to stand in front to foresee	gehen	to go
hinüber' (over, from you)	hinuntergehen		gehen	to go
herunter' (down, towards you)	herunter' (down, from you)		rufen	to call
hinunter' (down, from you)	herbei' (hither, near you)	} to go about to draw forth to neglect to go away to add to agree to travel about to stand in front to foresee	gehen	to go
herzu' (towards you)	herzu' (about)		ziehen	to draw
herum' (about)	hervor' (forth, out)		legen	to put
hervor' (forth, out)	hintan' (behind, after)	} to come to travel to stand to see	gehen	to go
hintan' (behind, after)	hinweg' (away)		legen	to put
hingzu' (to, towards, in addition)	überein' (over, to accordance)		fommen	to come
überein' (over, to accordance)	umher' (around, about)	} to determine to come to go	reifen	to travel
umher' (around, about)	voran' (before, in front)		fehen	to stand
voran' (before, in front)	voraus' (before, into the future)		fehen	to see
voraus' (before, into the future)	vorher' (before, beforehand)	} to determine be- forehand to pass to pass over	beftimmen	to determine
vorher' (before, beforehand)	vorbei' (by, over)		fommen	to come
vorbei' (by, over)	vorüber' (by, past, over)		gehen	to go

§ 111. The components of the following verbs used formerly to be written in the **infinitive form as two separate words**, but they are now written **all in one**. They are, however, still treated as **separable** in their conjugation.

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
fehl' schlagen, to fail.	ich schlage fehl'.	fehl' geschlagen.
frei' sprechen, to acquit.	ich spreche frei'.	frei' gesprochen.
gleich' kommen, to equal.	ich komme gleich'.	gleich' gekommen.
heim' kehren, to return home.	ich kehre heim'.	heim' gekehrt.
still' schweigen, to be silent.	ich schweige still'.	still' geschwiegen.
statt' finden, to take place.	ich finde statt'.	statt' gefunden.

5. Prefixes both Separable and Inseparable.

§ 112. *Except wieder* (adverb), all the following prefixes are prepositions. **Separable** the prefix is **accented**. **Inseparable** the prefix is **unaccented**.

<i>Separable.</i>	<i>Inseparable.</i>
durch' bringen, to force one's way through.	durchbrin' gen, to penetrate.
p. p. durch' gebrungen.	p. p. durchbrun' gen.
durch' gehen, to go through, to escape.	durchge' hen, to walk from one end to the other.
p. p. durch' gegangen.	p. p. durchgan' gen.
über' sehen, to cross (a river).	überse' zen, to translate.
p. p. über' geseht.	p. p. überseht'.
über' gehen, to go over.	überge' hen, to pass in silence.
p. p. über' gegangen.	p. p. übergan' gen.
um' gehen, to make a round about way, or to have intercourse with.	umge' hen, to avoid.
p. p. um' gegangen.	p. p. umgan' gen.
um' kleiden, to change dress.	umklei' den, to clothe, to cover.
p. p. um' gekleidet.	p. p. umkleidet'.
un' ter halten, to hold under.	unterhal' ten, to entertain, to maintain.
p. p. un' ter gehalten.	p. p. unterhal' ten.
un' ter schieben, to shove under.	unterschie' ben, to substitute falsely.
p. p. un' ter geschoben.	p. p. unterscho' ben.
wie' der holen, to fetch back.	wiederho' len, to repeat.
p. p. wie' der geholt.	p. p. wiederholt'.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE ADVERB (*Das Umstands- oder Nebenwort*).

§ 113. Adverbs denote: (1) **Place**, (2) **Time**, (3) **Manner**, (4) **Order**, (5) **Motion**, (6) **Relation**, (7) **Comparison**, (8) **Number**, (9) **Quality**, (10) **Quantity**, (11) **Affirmation**, (12) **Interrogation**, (13) **Negation**, (14) **Doubt**.

§ 114. Most adjectives may be used as adverbs *without any change* at all; as—gut, well; schön, beautifully; vortrefflich, excellently.

§ 115. Adverbs are formed from adjectives, substantives, and verbs by the terminations **haft** and **lich** (see App. § 66); as—wahrhaft, truly, from wahr, true; wörtlich, literally, from das Wort, word; begreiflich, conceivable, from begreifen, to conceive.

§ 116. The **comparison** of adverbs is formed in the same way as that of adjectives (see §§ 46–56). The **relative superlative** is formed by placing **am** before the superlative form of the adjective, which takes the *dative termination en*, like the predicative form of adjectives (see § 54).

Example.

Karl hat es gut gemacht, Ludwig	Charles has done it well, Louis
hat es besser gemacht, und Max	has done it better, and Max
am besten.	best of all.

As **superlative of eminence** we use either the superlative of the adjective in its unaltered form, as—eiligst, very hastily, from eilig, hastily; or we add to the superlative form of the adjective the termination **ens**, as—schönsteⁿ **ens**, most beautifully; or by placing **auf's** (contraction of auf das) before the *neuter* form of the *superlative* of the adjective; as—auf's schönste, in the best, the most beautiful way.

§ 117. Notice the comparison of the following adverbs :

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>	<i>English.</i>
bald,	früher, eher,	am frühesten, am ehesten, baldigst,	} soon, sooner, soonest.
gern,	lieber,	am liebsten,	willingly, more willingly, most willingly.
oft,	öfter,	am häufigsten,	often, oftener, oftenest.
übel,	ärger,	am ärgsten,	evil, worse, the worst.
viel,	mehr,	am meisten,	much, more, most.
wenig,	weniger, minder,	am wenigsten, am mindesten,	} little, less, the least.
wohl,	besser,	am besten, aufs beste,	} well, better, the best, in the best manner.

CHAPTER IX.

THE PREPOSITION (*Das Verhältniß- oder Vorwort*).

§ 118. Prepositions govern different cases. They are divided into four classes:

1. Prepositions Governing the Genitive.
2. Prepositions Governing the Dative.
3. Prepositions Governing the Accusative.
4. Prepositions Governing the Dative or Accusative.

§ 119. 1. Prepositions Governing the Genitive.

außerhalb, without, outside.	trotz (also with the Dative), in spite of.
diesseit, on this side of.	um — willen, for the sake of.
halben, on account of.	unbeschadet, without detriment.
jenseit, on that side of.	ungeachtet, notwithstanding.
innerhalb, inside, within.	unweit (unfern), not far from.
kraft, by the power of.	vermöge, by means of.
längs (also with the Dative), along.	vermittelft (mittelfst), by means of.
laut, according to.	während, during.
mittelft, by means of.	wegen, on account of.
oberhalb, above.	zufolge (also with the Dative), according to.
statt and anstatt, instead of.	
unterhalb, below.	

Most of them are contained in the following lines, which will greatly assist the memory:

Unweit, mittelft, kraft und während,	Statt, auch längs, zufolge, trotz
Laut, vermöge, ungeachtet,	Stehen mit dem Genitiv
Oberhalb und unterhalb,	Oder auf die Frage weissen?
Innerhalb und außerhalb,	Doch ist hier nicht zu vergessen,
Diesseit, jenseit, halben, wegen,	Daß bei diesen letzten drei
	Auch der Dativ richtig sei.

(From Dr. J. C. A. HEYSE's Grammar of the German Language.)

§ 120. 2. Prepositions Governing the Dative.

aus, out of, from.	nächst, zunächst, next.
außer, except, besides.	nebst, sammt, together with.
bei, near, with, by.	seit, since.
innen, within.	trotz, in spite of (also with the Genitive).
entgegen, against, towards.	von — an, from, since.
gegenüber, opposite to.	zu, to, at, for.
längs, along (also with the Genitive).	zufolge, according to (also with the Genitive).
gemäß, according to.	zuwider, in opposition, against, contrary to.
mit, with.	
nach, after, according to.	
ob (obsolete), on account of.	

Most of these prepositions are contained in the following lines:

Schreib mit, nach, nächst, nebst, sammt, bei, seit, von, zu,
zuwider,
Entgegen, binnen, außer, aus stets mit dem Dativ nieder.
(HEYSE.)

§ 121. 3. Prepositions Governing the Accusative.

bis, till.	ohne, without.
durch, by, through.	sonder, without.
für, for.	um, around, about, for.
gegen (gen), to, towards, against.	wider, against, in opposition to.

Most of these prepositions are contained in the following lines:

Bei durch, für, ohne, um, auch sonder, gegen, wider,
Schreib stets den Accusativ und nie den Dativ nieder.
(HEYSE.)

§ 122. 4. Prepositions Governing the Dative or Accusative.

The following prepositions are used either with the *Dative* or with the *Accusative*, according to the meaning of the verb with which they are connected. When the verb expresses *rest in or at a place*, the preposition must be followed by the *Dative* in answer to the question: *where?*

But when the action expressed by the verb denotes *motion*, or *direction towards a place*, the preposition is to be followed by the *Accusative* in answer to the question: *whither?* or *where to?*

an, at, on, near, to.

auf, on, upon, in, into.

hinter, behind.

in, in, into, to, at.

neben, by, near, at the side of.

über, over, at, above.

unter, below, under, among.

vor, before, ago, since.

zwischen, between, among.

amongst.

They are contained in the following lines:

An, auf, hinter, neben, in,
 Ueber, unter, vor und zwischen
 Stehen mit dem Accusativ,
 Wenn man fragen kann: wohin?
 Mit dem Dativ stehn sie so,
 Daß man nur kann fragen: wo?

(HEYSE.)

Examples.

(a) To § 119.—Wir wohnen außerhalb der Stadt, diesseit des Flusses. Während meiner Krankheit ist er mir ein treuer Freund gewesen. Der Diener that dies zufolge meines Auftrages. Den neuesten Nachrichten zufolge haben wir die Schlacht gewonnen. Kraft (vermöge) meines Amtes habe ich so gehandelt. Der König vergieh ihm seiner Jugend wegen.

(b) To § 120.—Ich komme soeben aus der Stadt. Was sollen wir mit dem Jungen anfangen? Wir haben Sie seit langer Zeit nicht gesehen. Er wohnt dem Posthause gegenüber. Sie kam heute Morgen mit dem Briefe zu mir.

(c) To § 121.—Durch seinen Fleiß hat er sich eine hohe Stellung erworben. Es handelt sich um dein Wohl. Wer nicht für mich ist, ist wider mich. Dies Buch ist für die Jugend geschrieben.

(d) To § 122.—Der Blumentopf steht vor dem Fenster. Stelle diese Blumen in die Vase. Auf dem Dache sitzt ein Vogel. Komm mit mir in den Garten. In unserm Garten giebt es viele schöne Blumen. Ich habe gestern an ihn geschrieben. Es liegt nicht an mir, sondern an ihm.

CHAPTER X.

THE CONJUNCTION (*Das Bindewort*).

§ 123. Conjunctions serve to connect words and clauses with one another. They are indeclinable, but deserve attention because of the effect they have upon the position of the verb.

The **co-ordinative conjunctions**—

und, and; oder, or; denn, for; sondern, but; aber, but;
allein, but; sowohl — als, as well as; and nämlich,
namely, to wit,

do not affect the order of words (see App. § 37).

§ 124. The following **subordinative conjunctions** require the verb of the subordinate clause, which they introduce, to stand at the end (see App. §§ 29–36):

als, as, than, when.
auf daß, in order that.
bevor, before.
bis, until, till.
da, since, as.
dafern, if, in case that.
damit, in order that, that.
daß, that.
ehe, before.
falls, in case that.
gleichwie, as.
indem, while, whilst, since, as.
je — je, or je — desto, the—the.
je nachdem, according to.
nachdem, after that.
nun, now, that.
ob, whether.
obgleich, }
ob schon, } although.
obwohl, }

seit, } since, from that
seitdem, } time.
so, if.
sobald als, as soon as.
so lange als, as long as.
so weit als, as far as.
während, whilst.
weil, because.
wenn, if.
wenn — auch, }
wenn — gleich, } although.
wenn — schon, }
wie, as.
wie — auch, however.
wiefern, as far as.
wiewohl, although.
wofern, in case that, if, provided
that.

All interrogative adverbs become conjunctions whenever they are used to connect one clause with another. In German Grammar, they are then called **relative conjunctions**, and, like the subordinative conjunctions, require the verb of the subordinate clause, which they introduce, to stand at the end (see Appendix, §§ 29-37). The following is a list of some of these words :

wo, where.	wobei, at which.	warum, why.
womit, with which.	woher, whence.	wie, how.
worin, in which.	wohin, whereto.	weßhalb, wherefore.
worauf, upon which.	wann, when.	weßwegen, wherefore.

auf welche Weise, in what manner ; as also a number of other combinations of the adverb wo with prepositions.

Examples with Subordinative and Relative Conjunctions.

Als ich heute Morgen ausgehen wollte, fing es plötzlich an zu regnen. Wir spielen gewöhnlich, nachdem wir unsere Arbeiten gemacht haben. Man kann keine Fortschritte machen, wenn man nicht aufmerksam ist. Ich habe gestern erfahren, daß er krank ist. Die Schüler erhalten Lob oder Tadel, je nachdem sie es verdienen. Ich weiß nicht, wo ich ihn finden soll. Ich kann nicht sagen, wie lange mein Vetter noch bei uns bleiben wird. Er mußte nicht, wohin er sich wenden sollte. Ich möchte gerne wissen, wie diese Aufgabe gelöst werden kann.

Adverbial Conjunctions.

The words given in the following list are adverbs ; but they are often placed at the head of a subordinate clause, and then become conjunctions. When thus used they are called **adverbial conjunctions**, and require the verb to stand before the subject.

also, therefore.	beßgleichen, likewise.
auch, also.	doch, yet.
balb — bald, now — then.	entweder — oder, either — or.
da, dann, then.	ferner, moreover, henceforth.
dagegen, on the other hand.	folglich, consequently.
daher, } therefore.	gleichwohl, still, however.
darum, }	hernach, afterwards.
dennach, accordingly.	jedoch, yet, still.
dennoch, yet.	faum aber, but scarcely.
deßhalb, } therefore.	mithin, consequently.
deßwegen, }	nachher, afterwards.

nicht allein, }	not only.	überdieß, besides.
nicht nur, }		übrigenß, as for the rest, more-
nichtßdestoweniger, nevertheless.		over.
noch, nor.		vielmehr, rather.
so, so, thus.		wohl aber, but indeed.
sonst, else.		zudem, besides.
theils — theils, partly — partly.		zwar, indeed, it is true.

Examples.

Der Lehrer hatte den Knaben befohlen stille zu sein, ka um aber hatte er das Zimmer verlassen, als dieselben anfangen zu plaudern. Ich habe kein Geld, so lglich kann ich Ihnen keins leihen. Binden Sie ein Tuch um, son st werden Sie sich erkälten. Ich möchte Ihnen gerne helfen, doch ist es nicht in meiner Macht. Er besitzt gute Anlagen, a uch ist er bestrebt, stets sein Bestes zu thun.

CHAPTER XI.

THE INTERJECTION (Das Empfindungswort).

§ 125. Expressing joy: ah! ha! hei! heisäh! juchhei! gottlob! heil! hurrah!

Expressing sorrow and displeasure: ach! ah! o! oh! o weh! weh dir! weh uns!

Expressing pain and disgust: ach! o! oh! o weh! leider! ä! pfui!

Expressing admiration and surprise: ah! ha! haha! hem! o! oh! ei! postausend!

Drawing attention: he! heda! holla! pfi!

PART II.

S Y N T A X.

THE CHIEF RULES OF THE SYNTAX.

CHAPTER I.

THE USE OF THE ARTICLES.

§ 126. The definite article is used more extensively in German than in English. It is employed especially in the following cases, where the English use *no* article:

1. Before substantives representing the *whole* of a given class, and before abstract nouns used in a general sense; as—

Der Mensch ist sterblich.

Man is mortal.

Das Eisen ist ein nützliches Metall.

Iron is a useful metal.

Liebe die Jugend.

Love virtue.

2. Before nouns expressing *time*; as—

der Frühling, spring; der Sommer, summer; der December, December;
der Dienstag, Tuesday; der Morgen, morning.

3. Before appellations of *classes, corporations, governments, and religious bodies*; as—

der Adel, nobility (as belonging to a class); die Regierung, government;
das Parlament, parliament; die Monarchie, monarchy;
das Judenthum, Judaism; das Christenthum, Christianity.

4. In the following phrases:

Nach der Stadt gehen.

To go to town.

In die Stadt gehen.

To go to town.

In der Stadt wohnen.

To live in town.

In die Kirche gehen.

To go to church.

In der Kirche beten.

To pray in church.

Zur Schule gehen.

To go to school.

In die Schule gehen.

To go to school.

Die meisten Menschen.

Most people.

Vor (und nach) dem Frühstück.

Before (and after) breakfast.

Vor (und nach) dem Mittagessen.

Before (and after) dinner.

Vor (und nach) dem Thee.

Before (and after) tea.

5. Before names of *countries* of the *feminine* gender, and before such as are used only in the *plural*; as—

die Schweiz, Switzerland; die Türkei, Turkey; die Niederlande, the Netherlands.

6. Before names of persons when used *familiarly* or *contemptuously*, and when preceded by an adjective, or by a common name; as—

Hole mir einmal den Heinrich.	Go and fetch Henry for me.
Der Wilhelm taugt nichts.	William is good for nothing.
Der arme Fritz!	Poor Fritz!
Der Kaiser Wilhelm.	Emperor William.

7. To mark the Genitive, Dative, and Accusative of *proper names*; as—

Das Leben des Julius Caesar.	The life of Julius Caesar.
Schiller schrieb dem Göthe, daß er das Buch angefangen habe.	Schiller wrote to Goethe that he had begun the book.
Er hat den Wilhelm dazu verleitet.	He has misled William into doing it.

§ 127. Several nouns of the *same* gender and number following each other, and separated by a comma, require the article before the *first alone*. This rule refers also to pronouns; as—

Die Tugend, Liebe und Milde des Kaisers.	The virtue, love, and gentleness of the Emperor.
--	--

§ 128. Proper names used as *common names* require the *indefinite article*; as—

Ein Göthe wird nur selten geboren.	A Goethe is but rarely born.
------------------------------------	------------------------------

§ 129. The *definite article* is often contracted with *prepositions*; as—

am, instead of an dem.	fürs, instead of für das.
ans, " " an das.	ins, " " in das.
aufs, " " auf das.	vom, " " von dem.
heim, " " bei dem.	zum, " " zu dem.
durchs, " " durch das.	zur, " " zu der.

NOTE.—The definite article is used in stating the price of goods, when the English employ the indefinite article; as—

Dieser Kattun kostet fünfzig Pfennige die Elle.	This cotton is sixpence <i>a</i> yard. (10 pfennigs = 1½d.)
Drei Mark die Flasche.	Three shillings <i>a</i> bottle. (1 mark = 1s.)

CHAPTER II.

THE GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives can only Govern the Genitive and Dative.

§ 130. *Adjectives Governing the Genitive.*

(GIVEN FOR REFERENCE.)

anſichtig (werden), to get a sight of.	lebig, free from, empty of.
bar, free of, destitute of.	loß, rid of.
bedürftig, in want of.	mächtig, able, master of.
benötigt, in need of.	müde, tired of.
bewußt, conscious of.	quitt, free of.
eingedenk, mindful of.	satt, satiated with.
fähig, capable of.	ſchuldig, guilty of.
froh, glad of.	theilhaftig, partaking in.
gewahr, aware of.	überdrußig, tired of.
gewärtig, in expectation of.	verdächtig, suspected of.
gewiß, certain of.	verluſtig, having forfeited or lost
gewohnt, accustomed to.	voll, full of.
habhaft (werden), to take possession of.	wert, worthy, deserving of.
fundig, acquainted with.	würdig, worthy of; and those compounded with the prefix un, as unfähig, unwert.

Examples.

Er iſt ſich keines Verbrechens bewußt.	He is not aware of having committed a crime.
Sie iſt jeder Aufopferung fähig.	She is capable of every sacrifice.
Wir ſind ſeiner Bitten müde.	We are tired of his entreaties.
Sei deß Namens deiner Väter werth.	Be worthy of the name of thy ancestors.

§ 131.

Adjectives Governing the Dative.

(GIVEN FOR REFERENCE.)

abtrünnig, faithless.
 ähnlich, like.
 angehörig, belonging to.
 annehm, agreeable.
 anhängig, adherent.
 anständig, becoming.
 anstößig, offensive.
 ärgerlich, vexatious.
 bedenklich, doubtful.
 begreiflich, comprehensible.
 behaglich, pleasing, comfortable.
 behülflich, helpful, useful.
 beifällig, assenting.
 bekannt, known.
 beliebig, to one's pleasure.
 bequem, comfortable.
 beschwerlich, troublesome.
 bewußt, known.
 böse, angry.
 dankbar, grateful.
 deutlich, clear.
 dienlich, useful.
 dienstbar, liable to serve.
 eigen, own, proper.
 eigenthümlich, proper, peculiar.
 einträglich, profitable.
 ekelhaft, disgusting.
 empfindlich, susceptible, irritable.
 entbehrlich, unnecessary.
 erfreulich, agreeable, pleasant.
 erinnerlich, coming to mind.
 erkenntlich, thankful, grateful.
 erklärlich, explicable.
 erprießlich, profitable.
 erträglich, endurable.
 feil, exposed to sale.
 feind, feindselig, hostile.

fern, afar off, distant.
 förderlich, beneficial.
 fremd, strange, unknown.
 fühlbar, sensible, palpable, perceptible.
 fürchtbar, formidable.
 fürchterlich, terrible.
 gebührlich, due.
 gedeihlich, salutary.
 gefährlich, dangerous.
 gefällig, obliging.
 gehässig, odious, hateful.
 gehörig, belonging.
 gehorſam, obedient.
 geläufig, familiar, fluent.
 gemäß, conformable, according.
 gemein, }
 gemeinſam, } common, in com-
 gemeinſchaftlich, } mon.
 genehm, agreeable, approved of.
 geſtändig, confessing.
 geſund, wholesome.
 getreu, faithful.
 gewogen, favourable.
 glaublich, credible.
 gleich, alike, like.
 gleichgültig, indifferent.
 gnädig, gracious, condescending.
 gram, angry.
 günſtig, favourable.
 gut, kindly disposed.
 hinderlich, hindering.
 hinlänglich, sufficient.
 hoß und abhoß, kindly and unkindly
 disposed.
 koſtbar, costly, precious.
 kund, known.
 lächerlich, ridiculous.

lästig, troublesome.

leicht, easy.

leid, grievous.

lieb, dear.

möglich, possible.

nachtheilig, prejudicial.

nahe, near.

noth,

nöthig, } necessary, needful.

nothwendig, }

nützlich, useful.

peinlich, painful.

rathsam, advisable, good.

recht, right, convenient.

ſauer, burdensome.

ſchädlich, hurtful.

ſchätzbar, valuable.

ſchimpflich, disgraceful.

ſchmeichelfhaft, flattering.

ſchmerzlich, painful.

ſchrecklich, dreadful.

ſchuldig, indebted, owing.

ſchwer, burdensome.

ſicher, sure, certain.

tauglich, fit, able, proper.

theuer, dear, valuable.

treu, faithful, true.

treulos, faithless.

tröstlich, comforting.

überlegen, superior.

übrig, remaining.

unausſtehllich, unbearable.

unterthan, unterthänig, subject to.

unvergeßlich, ever memorable.

unwiderſtehllich, irresistible.

verächtlich, despicable.

verantwortlich, responsible.

verbindlich, obliging.

verdächtig, suspicious.

verdaulich, digestible.

verderblich, pernicious.

verdrießlich, vexatious.

verſtändlich, intelligible.

verwandt, related, akin to.

vortheilhaft, advantageous.

wahrscheinlich, probable.

werth, valuable, dear.

wichtig, important.

widerlich, loathsome.

widerſpenſtig, obstinate.

widerräthig, adverse, vexatious.

widrig, disgusting, adverse.

willſährig, compliant.

willkommen, welcome.

wunderbar, wonderful.

zugänglich, accessible.

zugehörig, proper, belonging to.

zuſtändig, becoming, appertaining.

zuträglich, useful, profitable.

zweifelhaft, doubtful.

Also all adjectives formed from the preceding by the prefix *un*.

Examples.

Iſt es Ihnen recht?

Ja, es iſt mir Alles recht.

Der Soldat war dem Könige
danfbar.Die Nachricht war dem Manne
angenehm.Eiſſ iſt ihnen beiden gemein-
ſam.

Is it agreeable to you?

Yes, everything is agreeable to me.

The soldier was grateful to the
king.The news was pleasing to the
man.Industry is common to both of
them.

§ 132. The following Participles, when used as Adjectives, govern the Dative.

angeboren, inborn, innate.	gewachsen (sein, Semandem), to be a match for anybody.
angeerbt, inherited.	
angesehen, important.	verbunden, obliged.
angemessen, suitable, fit.	verhaßt, odious.
angestammt, hereditary, natural.	zugethan, devoted.
beigethan, devoted.	
beschieden, allotted, assigned.	Also unerwartet, unexpected, un-
ergeben, devoted.	verhofft, un hoped for, and
erwünscht, desirable.	all <i>real Participles</i> of verbs
gelegen, convenient.	<i>governing the Dative</i> , as—
geneigt, favourable.	danke, thanking.
abgeneigt, unfavourable.	geziemt, becoming, seeming.

Also many adjectives formed from verbs by the prefixes *bar* and *lich*, expressing ability and possibility, require the Dative of the person.

Examples.

Sein Besuch war mir nicht ge- legen.	His visit was not convenient to me.
Seiner Diener ist seinem Herrn ergeben.	That servant is devoted to his master.

Observation.—With adjectives denoting measure, time, weight, age, and value, the words expressing the measure, time, weight, age, and value stand in the accusative case; viz. einen Finger dick, einen Fuß hoch, einen Zoll breit; er ist einen Kopf größer als ich; sie ist zwölf Jahre alt; zehn Kilogramm schwer, etc. But in the preceding examples the accusative expressing measure, time, etc. is no more governed by the adjective connected with it, than the intransitive verbs *wachsen*, *leben*, and *kosten* can be considered to govern the accusative case when I say: er ist einen Viertelfuß gewachsen; sie hat zwölf Jahre und einen Monat gelebt; das Haus kostet zwanzigtausend Mark. It is a mistake to say that adjectives govern an accusative case.

CHAPTER III.

THE VERB.

I. *Agreement of the Verb with the Subject.*

§ 133. The verb must agree with its subject in number and person; as—

Wir spielen.

We play.

Ich bin zufrieden.

I am contented.

Die Knaben sind ausgegangen.

The boys have gone out.

§ 134. The verb must be in the *plural* when it belongs to *several* subjects of the *singular* number; as—

Bescheidenheit, Wahrheit und Wohlthätigkeit sind Tugenden, denen wir alle nachstreben sollten.

Modesty, truthfulness, and charity are virtues which we all should strive after.

§ 135. The *first* person has priority over the *second*, the *second* over the *third*; as—

Du, deine Schwester und ich wollen heute ins Concert gehen.

Thou, thy sister, and I will go into the concert to-day.

Du und er seid meine besten Freunde.

Thou and he are my best friends.

Er und die Kinder sind in den Garten gegangen.

He and the children have gone into the garden.

§ 136. The verb must be in the *singular* after a collective substantive in the *singular*; as—

Das deutsche Volk ist noch sehr in seiner Freiheit beschränkt.

The German people are still very limited in their freedom.

II. *The use of the Tenses of the Indicative Mood.*1. *The Present.*

§ 137. The **Present** is frequently used in German instead of the **Imperfect** for making a narration of past events more lively; as—

Denken Sie sich meinen Schrecken!	Imagine my terror! Yesterday I
Ich gehe gestern am Flusse spazieren, als ich plötzlich bemerke,	was walking by the river, when
daß ein kleines Kind, welches am Ufer spielte, ins Wasser fällt.	suddenly I noticed that a little
Im Nu springe ich ihm nach,	child, which was playing on
erfasse es beim Rock und	the bank, fell into the water.
ziehe es ans Ufer.	In a moment I jumped after it,
	took hold of it by its dress,
	and drew it to the bank.

§ 138. As in English, so in German, the **Present** is often used instead of the **first Future**, especially when futurity is indicated by an adverb or adverbial clause of time, or when the action is considered as *certain*; as—

Wir reisen morgen nach Hamburg ab.	To-morrow we leave for Hamburg.
In vierzehn Tagen kommen wir wieder.	We return in a fortnight.

§ 139. The **Present** is often used in German where the English use the **Perfect**, to express **duration**, especially after the adverbs of time—*seit*, since, and *schon*, already; as—

Ich kenne ihn seit zehn Jahren.	I have known him for ten years.
Unsere Familie wohnt schon zwanzig Jahre in dieser Stadt.	Our family has been living in this town for the last twenty years.

§ 140. The **English compound forms of the verb with the auxiliary and the present participle, and of the verb 'to do' with the infinitive, are unknown in German**, which has only the corresponding *simple* tenses for translating them. To form a question we put the subject after the predicate, and in compound tenses after the auxiliary; as—

Ich lese.—Question: Lese ich schlecht?	I am reading.—Do I read badly?
Ich habe gelesen.—Question: Habe ich gelesen?	I have been reading.—Have I been reading?
Ich hatte gelesen.—Ich werde lesen.	I had been reading.—I am going to read.

2. The Imperfect.

§ 141. The Imperfect is chiefly used as a historical tense, and to express a past action or occurrence with reference to another; as—

Friedrich II war ein großer König.	Frederick II was a great king.
Ich schrieb eben einen Brief, als	I was writing a letter, when he
er plötzlich ins Zimmer trat	suddenly entered the room
und mich zu einem Spaziergange	and asked me to take a walk
aufforderte.	with him.

3. The Perfect.

§ 142. The Perfect is more extensively used in German than in English.

1. It is used to express an action or occurrence both perfect and past, without reference to any other action or occurrence; as—

Dein Brief hat mir große Freude	Your letter has given me great
gemacht.	pleasure.
Ich habe den Diener reich be-	I have made the servant a hand-
schenkt.	some present. (beschenken, to
	make a present.)

2. It is used in familiar conversation speaking of recent events; as—

Sind Sie gestern im Concert ge-	Were you at the concert yester-
wesen?	day?
Nein, ich bin nicht wohl gewesen.	No, I was not well.

3. It is sometimes used instead of the Second Future, as in English; as—

Ich werde mit dir ausgehen, wenn	I shall go out with you as soon
ich den Brief geschrieben	as I have written the letter.
habe (instead of geschrieben	
haben werde).	

4. The Pluperfect.

§ 143. The use of the Pluperfect is the same in German as in English, but it may be observed here, that in subordinate sentences the auxiliary hatte or war is often omitted, and must be understood; as—

Nachdem ich die Zeitung gelesen	After I had read the paper I went
hatte, ging ich aus.	out.
Und eh' ihm noch das Wort entfallen	And before the word had escaped
(war understood). (Schiller.)	him.

5. The First and Second Future.

§ 144. The **First Future** is used instead of the Present, and the **Second Future** instead of the Perfect in sentences suggesting the probability of an action or event; as—

Das kann nicht sein, Sie werden sich irren. (First Future.)	That cannot be, you <i>are</i> probably <i>mistaken</i> . (Present with an ex- pression of supposition.)
Es ist schon spät, und man wird zu Hause auf uns gewartet haben. (Second Future.)	It is getting late, and very likely they <i>have been waiting</i> for us at home. (Perfect with an ex- pression of supposition.)

§ 145. The **First Future** is used instead of the **Imperative** to express command; as—

Sie werden sogleich gehen! Go directly!

§ 146. The English '**I am going**,' followed by an infinitive, must be translated either by *ich bin im Begriff*, or by *the simple Future*; as—

Ich bin im Begriff an ihn zu schreiben.	I am going to write to him. (I am about to write to him.)
Ich werde an ihn schreiben.	I am going to write to him.

Im Begriff sein, however, answers often to the English '*to be about*.'

III. The Moods.

1. The Indicative Mood.

§ 147. The Indicative Mood is the Mood of Actuality, whilst the Subjunctive Mood is the Mood of Possibility. The nature of the Indicative may be said to be *objective*, because it is used to express positive facts. The nature of the Subjunctive may be said to be *subjective*, because it represents the statement made as a mere subjective supposition, or as resting on the mere hearsay evidence of other persons.

The Indicative Mood denotes **Positiveness and Certainty**.

Conjunctions never determine the mood in which a verb is to be used. The mood is always determined by the nature of the statement we wish to make. So one and the same verb may be followed, in the dependent clause, either by the Indicative or the Subjunctive Mood.

Examples.

Der Gefangene ist todt; er ist heute Morgen gestorben. (Positive statement.)	The prisoner is dead; he died this morning.
Ich bin überzeugt, daß er es gesagt hat. (Certainty.)	I am convinced that he has said it.
Der Mensch ist sterblich. (A Fact.)	Man is mortal.
Ich habe gehört, daß er zum Mini- ster ernannt ist.	I have heard that he has been appointed a minister, (and I do not doubt it).

(Here the Indicative Mood is used, because I wish to imply that I have *no doubt* about the accuracy of the statement.)

Ich habe gehört, daß er zum Mini- ster ernannt sei (see § 150, III).	I have heard that he has been appointed a minister, (but I rather doubt it).
--	--

(Here the Subjunctive Mood is used because I wish to express a *doubt* about the accuracy of the statement, which is expressed in English by the words 'but I rather doubt it.')

2. The Subjunctive (or Conjunctive) Mood.

(See § 147.)

§ 143. Since, in the best modern works of English Literature, we frequently find the Indicative employed instead of the Subjunctive in clauses of uncertainty and supposition, and since, with the exception of the verb *to be*, it is evidently the tendency of the English language to reject the distinction of the Subjunctive Mood, the student will encounter no small difficulty in learning the right use of the German Subjunctive, which is most extensively used, and gives often great power, conciseness, and elegance to the mode of speaking.

The Subjunctive Mood is used both in principal and subordinate clauses, and denotes **Uncertainty and Supposition**.

Examples.

Man sagt, er sei gestorben (see § 150, II). (Uncertainty.)	People say (i. e. it is rumoured) he is dead.
Plato glaubte, daß nur ein Gott sei. (Supposition.)	Plato thought that there was only <i>one</i> God, (but that it was a matter of doubt).

§ 149. The Subjunctive expresses Command, Wish, and Concession.

Examples.

Er nehme seine Weite, wie's Brauch ist! (Schiller.) (Command.)	Let him take his distance as it is customary!
Gott sei mit dir! (Wish.)	God be with you!
Er gehe, wohin er Lust hat. (Con- cession.)	He may go wherever he pleases.

§ 150.

I.

The Subjunctive is used in Indirect Speech (*oratio obliqua*), i.e. when words which have been actually spoken are *quoted* not as they were spoken, but *in substance only*; it stands especially after the verbs *sagen*, to say; *erzählen*, to relate; *melden*, to report; *berichten*, to relate, to report; *hören*, to hear; as—

Er sagte ihm, er sei ein Verschwender.	He told him he was a spendthrift
Sie behauptete, sie habe den Brief nicht erhalten.	She asserted that she had not got the letter.
Sein Freund meldete, daß er nicht kommen könne, mich zu besuchen.	His friend reported that he could not come to see me.

II.

The Subjunctive is used when the statement made in the subordinate clause is intended to be represented not as a fact, but as a mere idea, as a mere conception of the person speaking. We find it, therefore, especially after verbs denoting a request, a wish, a hope, an apprehension, a permission, an advice, and a command; as—

meinen, to mean.	wollen, to be willing.
glauben, to believe.	bitten, to ask.
vermuten, to presume.	befehlen, to command.
zweifeln, to doubt.	verlangen, to demand.
scheinen, to seem.	ermahnen, to admonish.
hoffen, to hope.	rathen, to advise.
fürchten, to fear.	bestehen, to insist upon,

And others of a like meaning.

Examples.

Lassen Sie uns hoffen, daß unser Streben von Erfolg sein werde.	Let us hope that our endeavours may be successful.
--	---

Ich bat ihn, daß er mir helfen möge.	I asked him to help me.
Ich fürchtete, daß er ein Bein gebrochen habe.	I was afraid that he had broken a leg.
Wir bitten, daß der Gefangene frei gelassen werde.	We request that the prisoner be released.
Er zweifelt daran, daß man ihn für unschuldig erklären werde.	He doubts if he will be declared innocent.
Wir werden stets verlangen, daß man uns unsere Rechte gewähre.	We shall always demand that our rights be given to us.
Ich rathe dir, daß du fleißiger werdest.	I advise you to become more industrious.
Ich bestehe darauf, daß sich der Lord entferne. (Schiller.)	I insist upon the Lord's retiring.

III.

With regard to the *Tense* in which the Subjunctive ought to stand in subordinate clauses of the character mentioned above, the general rule is, that—

We use the same tense of the Subjunctive Mood which, in direct speech, or in a principal clause, would be used in the Indicative Mood, except that

the Perfect of the Subjunctive is used instead of the Imperfect of the Indicative, and that the Pluperfect of the Indicative is changed into the Perfect of the Subjunctive, with the help of one of the conjunctions *ehe*, *bevor*, and *nachdem*.

The following table will make this clear:—

<i>Direct Speech.</i>	<i>Indirect Speech.</i>
Er sagte: „Ich lese.“ (Present.)	Er sagte, er lese. (Present Subj.)
Er sagte: „Ich habe gelesen.“ (Perfect.)	Er sagte, er habe gelesen. (Perfect Subj.)
Er sagte: „Ich werde lesen.“ (First Future.)	Er sagte, er werde lesen. (First Future Subj.)
Er sagte: „Ich werde gelesen haben (Second Future), wenn mein Freund mich abholen wird.“ (First Future.)	Er sagte, er werde gelesen haben (Second Future Subj.), wenn sein Freund ihn abholen werde (First Future Subj.).

But—

Direct Speech.

Er sagte: „Ich laß, als sein Freund schrieb.“ (Imperfect.)

Er sagte: „Ich hatte gelesen (Pluperfect), als mein Freund schrieb.“ (Imperfect.)

Indirect Speech.

Er sagte, er **habe** gelesen, als sein Freund **geschrieben habe**. (Perfect Subjunctive.)

Er sagte, er **habe** gelesen (Perfect Subjunctive), **ehe** sein Freund **geschrieben habe**. (Perfect Subjunctive.)

It will be seen, therefore, that the verb in the subordinate clause stands either in the Present, in the Perfect, or in the Future.

Examples.

Der Diener antwortete, er sei nicht im Stande die Arbeit zu thun, denn er sei zu schwach. (Present Subjunctive.)

Er erzählte mir, er habe ein Unglück gehabt. (Perfect Subj.)

Sie behauptete, daß sie nie in ihrem Leben krank gewesen sei. (Perfect Subjunctive.)

Er sagte, daß er sich um eine Stelle bewerben werde. (First Future.)

The servant answered that he was unable to do the work, for he was too weak.

He told me he had met with a misfortune.

She affirmed that she had never been ill in all her life.

He said that he was going to apply for a situation.

The Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive, however, must be used instead of the Present and Perfect Subjunctive, and the Conditional instead of the Future Subjunctive, when any ambiguity might arise as to the mood employed, that is to say in cases where the form of the Present, of the Perfect, or of the Future is *identical* both in the Indicative and the Subjunctive Mood.

For example, in the sentence—

„Sie sagte mir, ihre Töchter gingen niemals auf Bälle;“

‘She said to me that her daughters never went to balls;’

the verb *gingen* stands in the *Imperfect Subjunctive* and *not* in the *Present*, because the third person plural of the Present Indicative and the corresponding person of the Present Subjunctive are *identical* in the conjugation of this verb. Both are „*sie gehen*,“ the verb, therefore, must be put in the *Imperfect Subjunctive* to show clearly the mood employed.

IV.

The Subjunctive is employed in adverbial clauses of purpose and of manner, when the subordinate clause generally begins with the conjunctions *daß*, *auf daß*, *damit*, and *als ob*; as—

Du sollst deinen Vater und deine Mutter ehren, auf daß dir's wohlgehe und du lange lebest auf Erden.	Thou shalt honour thy father and thy mother, that thou mayest prosper and thy days be long on earth.
Ist es nicht, als ob dies Volk mich zum Gott mache? (Schiller.)	Does it not seem as if the people meant to make a God of me?

V.

The Imperfect Subjunctive and the Pluperfect Subjunctive are used to express something possible, or something capable of being done, also to denote a mere supposition on the part of the speaker, or for the purpose of stating an opinion with *caution* or *modesty*; as—

Es könnte sein, daß er nicht zu Hause wäre.	Literally: It might be possible that he were not at home, i.e. He may possibly not be at home.
Ich hätte wohl Lust, ihm einen Besuch zu machen.	I should like indeed to pay him a visit.
Ich wüßte wohl, was zu thun wäre.	I fancy I know what ought to be done.
Es wäre vielleicht besser, das Unternehmen aufzugeben.	Perhaps it would be better to give up the undertaking.

VI.

To express a wish we use the *Present Subjunctive*, when we believe in the fulfilment of the wish, but the *Imperfect Subjunctive*, when we want to indicate that the fulfilment of the wish is unlikely, and even impossible; as—

Gott sei mit dir!	God be with you!
Möge er bald gesund werden!	May he soon recover his health!
Lang lebe der König!	Long live the king!
Gott helfe mir! (Luther.)	May God help me!

But with the Imperfect Subjunctive:

Wöchte er bald gesund werden!	Would he might soon recover his health!
Wenn er doch noch lebte!	I would he were still alive!
Wöchte er bald kommen!	Would he might soon come!

VII.

It must always be remembered that both moods (the Indicative and the Subjunctive) may stand in Principal Clauses as well as in Subordinate Clauses, since *their use depends alone on the nature of the statement we wish to make* (see § 147). Nor has the notion connected with the verb standing in the principal clause an absolute influence on the mood to be used in the subordinate clause. The Indicative stands in subordinate clauses not merely after verbs expressing Certainty, but also after such as denote Belief, Supposition, and Doubt, when the statement contained in the subordinate clause is represented *objectively*, i.e. as being based upon a fact, or as being, in the speaker's opinion, not open to any doubt. So we say—

Ich glaube, daß er in der Schlacht geblieben ist (not sei).	I believe that he was killed in battle.
Ich weiß nicht, ob er lebt, oder ob er todt ist.	I do not know whether he is alive, or whether he is dead.
Ich zweifle, daß der Kranke genesen wird.	I doubt if the patient will recover.
Ich hoffe, daß er sich wohl befindet.	I hope that he is well.

But when the statement contained in the subordinate clause is represented *subjectively*, i.e. as being based upon a mere idea or belief, the correctness of which is still open to doubt, the Subjunctive must be used; as—

Man glaubt, man sagt, etc., er sei in der Schlacht geblieben.	People believe, people say, etc., that he was killed in battle, (but it is still doubtful).
Er fürchtet, daß man ihn verrathen habe.	He is afraid that they have betrayed him, (yet he does not know).

3. The Conditional Mood.

§ 151.

I.

The Conditional is the mood for representing a state or an event as dependent on another, which other, however, is not based upon a real

fact, but is a mere hypothesis or supposition. As such we use not only the First and Second Conditional (*ich würde*, etc.), as given in the tables of verbs, but also the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive. The latter two, in fact, may be called the simple forms of the Conditional Mood, and the former (*ich würde*, etc.) the compound forms. Every true conditional statement consists of two clauses: (*a*) the hypothetical clause, which contains the supposition, (*b*) the conditioning clause, which contains the inference drawn from that supposition; as—

If I had money (hypothetical clause),

I should like to travel (conditioning clause).

The Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive may be used in both clauses, but the First and Second Conditional (*ich würde*, etc.—see the tables of verbs) can only be used in conditioning clauses.

The conditioning clause is often introduced by „*ſc.*“

Examples.

Wenn ich Geld hätte, ginge ich gern auf Reisen (or würde ich gern auf Reisen gehen).	If I had money, I should like to travel.
Wenn es heute schönes Wetter ge- wesen wäre, so würden wir ausgegangen sein.	If the weather had been fine to- day, we should have gone out.
Dieser Mann könnte glücklicher sein, wenn er das Spiel nicht zu sehr liebte.	This man might be happier, if he were not too fond of gambling.
Er würde gesund sein (or er wäre gesund), wenn er mäßiger lebte.	He would be healthy, if he were more temperate.

II.

The Conditional is sometimes used *elliptically*; as—

Ja, ich würde gekommen sein!	Yes, I should have come! (i.e. if I had been able to do so, <i>un- derstood</i>).
Unter den Umständen hätte ich es gewiß gethan.	I am sure, under the circumstances I should have done it (i.e. if I had been placed in the same situation).
Wäre ich reich, würde ich Sie sofort bezahlen.	Were I rich, I should pay you directly.

4. The Imperative Mood.

§ 152. The use of this mood is much the same in the two languages. It must, however, be remembered that, in polite conversation with strangers, the personal pronoun „*Sie*“ is always used *wherever the third person plural is employed instead of the second person*, as will be seen from the following two sentences:

Liebet eure Feinde.	Love your enemies.
Holen Sie mir gefälligst meinen Hut.	Please, fetch my hat for me.

5. The Infinitive Mood.

§ 153.

I.

The Infinitive is mostly used with the preposition *zu*, when it assumes an *objective* or *attributive* signification, and is called **Supine**. By placing the preposition *zu* before the *Infinitive Present*, we form the *Supine Present*—*zu lieben, zu spielen, zu essen*; and from the *Infinitive Past* we form the *Supine Past* by putting the preposition *zu* between the two constituent parts—*geliebt zu haben, to have loved*; *gekommen zu sein, to have come*; *gegessen zu haben, to have eaten*.

To form the *Supine Present* of *compound separable verbs* we must place the preposition *zu* between the separable prefix and the verb—*auszu-gehen, from ausgehen, to go out*; but again the *Supine Past* requires the *zu* to be placed between the two constituent parts of the *Infinitive Past*; as—

ausgegangen zu sein,	to have gone out;
angefangen zu haben,	to have begun.

Examples of Supines of Passive and Reflective Verbs.

Passive	{ Supine Present: gelobt zu werden, to be praised.
	{ Supine Past: gelobt worden zu sein, to have been praised.
Reflective	{ Supine Present: sich zu freuen, to be glad.
	{ Supine Past: sich gefreut zu haben, to have been glad.

Examples.

Mein Vetter hat mir versprochen, heute mit uns zu spielen.	My cousin has promised me to play with us to-day.
Er kann nicht behaupten, zur rechten Zeit gekommen zu sein.	He cannot maintain that he came at the right time.

Das Wetter ist nicht schön genug,
um heute auszugehen.

The weather is not fine enough
for going out to-day.

Wir bedauern, nicht früher ange-
fangen zu haben.

We regret not to have begun
earlier.

NOTE.—From the Supine, by adding *d*, we form a **Participle Gerundive**, which, like the Latin Gerundive in *-ndus*, as *laudandus*, has a passive signification, and denotes something which *must be done*, *can be done*, or *deserves to be done*.

From the Supine *zu loben*, we form in this way the Participle Gerundive *zu lobend*, to be loved. The Participle Gerundive, however, is only used attributively in connection with nouns, and is declined like an adjective.

Examples.

Das ist ein zu lobendes Beispiel.

That is an example to be praised.

Ich verstehe die zu lösende Aufgabe
nicht.

I do not understand the problem
to be solved.

II.

The Infinitive with *zu* (or the Supine) is used—

A. As Object after verbs which require an Infinitive to complete their meaning. (For exceptions see § 153, IV.)

Examples.

Sie wünscht zu gefallen.

She wishes to please.

Ich freue mich, Sie wiederzusehen.

I am glad to see you again.

Suche zu sein, was du zu scheinen
wünschest.

Endeavour to be what you wish to
seem.

Er bat mich zu kommen.

He asked me to come.

Sie nöthigten uns, ihnen zu folgen.

They compelled us to follow them.

Er hat hier nichts zu sagen.

He has nothing to say here.

B. After nouns and adjectives which require an Infinitive to complete their meaning; as—

Ich habe Lust zu tanzen.

I have a mind to dance.

Dieser Junge hat keinen Muth zu
kämpfen.

This boy has no courage to
fight.

Es ist Zeit zu gehen.

It is time to go.

Er hat leider keine Gelegenheit
Deutsch zu sprechen.

He has, I am sorry, no opportunity
of speaking German.

Ich bin neugierig zu hören, ob er wirklich abgereist ist.	I am curious to hear if he has really left.
Es ist unmöglich zu glauben, daß sie ihre Stellung nicht kennt.	It is impossible to believe that she does not know her position.
Die Sache ist leicht zu ver- stehen.	It is easy to understand this matter.

C. The Supine is used with an attributive signification, especially after the verbs *sein* and *bleiben*, when the verb assumes generally the passive form in English; as—

Der fleißige Schüler ist zu loben.	The industrious pupil is to be praised.
Es bleibt noch viel zu thun.	There remains much to be done yet.
Sie ist nirgends zu finden.	She is nowhere to be found.
Eine solche Behandlung ist nicht zu ertragen.	Such a treatment is not to be borne.
Es bleibt nichts zu wünschen übrig.	There is nothing left to be de- sired.

D. The Supine is used as subject when it stands after the predicate (Ex. 1), or when it indicates something which ought to be done (Ex. 2) [compare § 153, IV]; as—

Es geziemt dem Manne, thätig zu sein.	It behoves a man to be active.
Seinen Feinden zu verzeihen, ist die Pflicht des Christen.	It is the duty of a Christian to pardon his enemies.

E. The Supine is used to express purpose, and must be employed whenever the English *to* is used in the meaning of 'in order to,' or 'for the purpose of;,' when thus employed the Supine is generally preceded by *um*; as—

Ich bin hier, um zu lernen.	I am here <i>to learn</i> (i.e. for the pur- pose of learning).
Wollen Sie heute Abend kommen, um Deutsch mit mir zu lesen?	Will you come this evening <i>to read</i> German with me?

In the two preceding examples the parts '*to learn*' and '*to read*' are really verbal nouns in the dative case, expressing the purpose. '*To learn*,' in the first sentence, stands instead of '*for to learn*,' and the

dative with *to* is found in old English actually preceded by the preposition '*for*':

So faine they were the helplesse *for to* ease.—Chaucer.

But what went ye out *for to* see?—English Bible.

(See Dr. ADAMS' English Grammar, § 625 and § 631.)

F. The construction of the **Infinitive with an Accusative**, so frequently employed in English as an imitation of the Latin and the Greek, is **unknown in German**. Such constructions must be rendered by a subordinate clause introduced by the conjunction *daß*; as—

I know *him to be* an industrious man.

Ich weiß, daß er ein fleißiger Mann ist.

The master wished *me to go* directly.

Der Herr wünschte, daß ich gleich gehen sollte.

Do you want *him to break* his word?

Wollen Sie, daß er sein Wort brechen soll?

III.

The *German Supine* (or the Infinitive with *zu*) corresponds in many cases with the English Gerund (i.e. the verbal in -ing), and this fact will greatly assist the student in the right translation of these forms in either language. Unfortunately, however, the English Gerund is frequently confounded with the Present Participle, both having the same termination (-ing), and before entering upon the study of the rules relating to this subject, and to the translation of the English Participle in -ing (see § 154), the author wishes to refer the student to the subjoined extract from Dr. Adams' English Grammar:

'One form of the Infinitive, usually called the Gerund (*speaking*), is commonly confounded with the Imperfect Participle (commonly called the Present Participle). They may be readily distinguished by the fact that the Gerund is a noun, and may therefore be either the subject or the object of a verb; while the Participle, being an adjective, must refer to some noun expressed or understood. In the sentence "Fishing is exciting," the word *fishing* is a noun, the subject of the verb; *exciting* is an adjective qualifying this verbal noun. In the phrase "Seeing is believing," both are Gerunds, the word *believing* being in apposition to the word *seeing*.'

How to render the English Gerund.

A. In cases where the English *Gerund* is governed by a noun, or by a verb, it is most generally rendered by the *Supine*, i.e. by the Infinitive preceded by *zu*; as—

He possesses the *gift of speaking* well.

Er besitzt die Gabe gut zu sprechen.

Give me the *pleasure of hearing* you play.

Machen Sie mir das Vergnügen, Sie spielen zu hören.

I *intend spending* my holidays in London.

Ich beabsichtige, meine Ferien in London zu verbringen.

Do not *begin talking*!

Fangen Sie nicht an zu sprechen!

B. The *Supine* is likewise used for rendering the English *Gerund* when the latter is preceded by the prepositions *by*, *for*, *in*, *instead of*, *near* (nahe daran), *of*, *on*, *towards*, *upon*, *with*, *without*, and a few others; sometimes, however, these forms may be rendered by the help of the subordinative conjunction *daß* and a finite verb, i.e. one with a personal termination (Example 4):

He has no cause *for speaking* as he does.

Er hat keine Ursache, so zu sprechen, wie er spricht.

He is right *in thinking* that true happiness consists *in being* contented.

Er hat Recht zu glauben, daß das wahre Glück darin besteht, zufrieden zu sein.

I am tired *of waiting* for him.

Ich bin müde, auf ihn zu warten.

He thanked his friend *for having* introduced him to such a delightful family circle.

Er dankte seinem Freunde (dafür), daß derselbe ihn in einen so angenehmen Familienkreis eingeführt habe (§ 150, I).

With verbs or adjectives requiring a preposition, the adverb *da* in connection with that preposition is generally placed in the principal clause, whilst the infinitive with *zu*, or the conjunction *daß* and the finite verb, appear in the secondary clause. According to this rule, the sentence—

‘I depend upon hearing from you’,

must be rendered by—

„Ich verlasse mich darauf, von Ihnen zu hören“,

since the verb *sich verlassen* always requires the preposition *auf*. So, likewise, ‘to be proud of something’ is „auf etwas stolz sein“, the adjective *stolz* requiring the preposition *auf*, and consequently the sentence—

‘She is proud of having such a good teacher’,

must be rendered by—

„Sie ist stolz darauf, einen so guten Lehrer zu haben“.

(See examples 2 and 4 of this rule.)

C. The English Gerund preceded by a possessive adjective and a preposition, must be translated by a regular subordinate clause with a conjunction and a finite verb. So the sentence—

‘I am certain *of her being* aware of it,’

must be rendered by saying—

‘I am certain *that she is* aware of it,’ i.e.

„Ich bin sicher, daß sie davon weiß.“

From this it will be seen that the possessive adjective must be changed into the nominative of a corresponding personal pronoun, and the preposition into a corresponding conjunction, the Gerund being turned into a finite verb.

For the translation of passages of this kind the preposition *against* corresponds to *dagegen*, daß; *at* to *daß*, or *darüber*, daß; *before* to *bevor* or *ehe*; *by* to *dadurch*, daß; *from* to *davon*, daß; *of* to *daß*; *on* to *als* or *wenn*; *upon* to *darauf*, daß—or *nachdem*; *without* to *ohne* daß; etc.

In cases where the possessive adjective is not preceded by a preposition, the conjunction *daß* must be used.

Examples.

It comes <i>from her being</i> so very careless.	Es kommt davon, daß sie so sorglos ist.
My father has nothing <i>against my going</i> to Germany this year.	Mein Vater hat nichts dagegen, daß ich in diesem Jahre nach Deutschland gehe.
The master was surprised <i>at his attending</i> his lessons so regularly.	Der Lehrer war erstaunt, daß er so regelmäßig seine Stunden besuchte.
The minister insisted <i>upon his being heard</i> first.	Der Minister bestand darauf, daß man ihn zuerst hören solle.
<i>Upon his having left</i> the house, there arose a great uproar, which could be only suppressed with great trouble.	Nachdem er das Haus verlassen hatte, erhob sich ein großer Lärm, der nur mit Mühe unterdrückt werden konnte.

D. When the English Gerund is preceded by a possessive adjective without a preposition, the sentence must be turned into

a subordinate clause with a finite verb, introduced by the conjunction *daß*; as—

My listening to him is of no good. *Daß ich ihm zuhöre, nützt nichts.*
I could not bear his looking at me. *Ich konnte nicht ertragen, daß er mich ansah.*

E. Sometimes the *Gerund* is preceded by a noun in the *Anglo-Saxon Genitive* and by a possessive adjective joined to a preposition; as—

'She went away without her mother's knowing it.'

Such sentences must be rendered by making the Genitive the Nominative of a subordinate clause with a finite verb; thus—

'She went away without that her mother knew it,' i.e.

"Sie ging fort, ohne daß ihre Mutter es wußte."

IV.

The Infinitive, however, is also often used without *zu*, especially—

1. As Subject (compare § 153, II, *D*); as—

Verzeihen ist edel. It is noble to pardon.
Irren ist menschlich. To err is human.

2. After the auxiliary verbs of mood: *dürfen*, *können*, *mögen*, *müssen*, *sollen*, *wollen*, and *lassen*; as—

Wir müssen hoffen, daß er kommen wird. We must hope that he will come.

3. In certain phrases with the auxiliary *haben*; as—

Er hat gut reden. It is all very well for him to talk.

4. After the verb *thun* followed by *nichts*; as—

Er thut nichts, als essen und trinken. He does nothing but eat and drink.

5. With the verbs *heißen* (to bid, to command), *helfen*, *lehren*, *lernen*, and *machen*; as—

Meine Mutter lehrte mich lesen und schreiben. My mother taught me to read and write.

6. With the verbs *sehen*, *hören*, *fühlen*, and *finden*; as—

Der Diener fand seinen Herrn todt am Boden liegen. The servant found his master lying dead on the floor.

7. With the verbs *gehen*, *reiten*, *fahren*, and *bleiben*; as—
Wir gehen jeden Morgen spazieren. We go out for a walk every morning.

NOTE.—The auxiliary verbs of mood (see § 87), and the verbs *heißen* (to bid), *helfen*, *hören*, *sehen*, and sometimes *lehren* and *lernen*, have the peculiarity of requiring the *Infinitive instead of the Past Participle*, when, in the Perfect and Pluperfect tenses, they are used in connection with the Infinitives of other verbs.

Examples.

<i>Ich habe es nicht thun dürfen</i> (not <i>gedurft</i>).	I have not been allowed to do it.
<i>Ich habe kommen wollen, aber ich habe nicht gekonnt.</i>	I have intended to come, but I have not been able.
<i>Er hat mir arbeiten helfen.</i>	He has helped me in my work.
<i>Wer hat Sie kommen heißen?</i>	Who has bid you to come?

When these verbs, however, are *not* used in connection with the Infinitives of other verbs, the Past Participle is used for the formation of the Perfect and Pluperfect in the regular way; as—

<i>Ich habe nicht gekonnt.</i>	I have not been able to.
<i>Er hat gemußt.</i>	He has been compelled to.
<i>Ich habe ihn weder gehört, noch gesehen.</i>	I have neither heard nor seen him.
<i>Er hat mir redlich geholfen.</i>	He has helped me honestly.

6. The Participles.

A. THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

§ 154.

I.

As in English the Participle in *-ing*, so also in German the **Present Participle can be used attributively**, i.e. to qualify a noun following it, and, in this relation, it must be declined according to the rules laid down for the declension of adjectives (compare § 153, III).

Examples.

<i>Die liebende Mutter drückte ihr Kind mit Inbrunst an ihr klopfendes Herz.</i>	The loving mother pressed her child with fervour to her beating heart.
<i>Die goldenen Strahlen der sinkenden Sonne beleuchteten die Landschaft mit magischer Schönheit.</i>	The golden beams of the setting sun illuminated the landscape with magic beauty.

II.

German Present Participles, properly so called, do not admit of the degrees of comparison. There is, however, a small number of words, which, although originally the Present Participles of verbs, and having retained the forms of such, have become *true* adjectives and admit of the degrees of comparison; as—

Eine reizendere Landschaft als diese
kann man sich kaum denken.

A more charming landscape than
this can scarcely be imagined.

Die dringendsten Geschäfte sind
jetzt beseitigt.

The most pressing business is now
done away with.

III.

The Present Participle may be employed adverbially to denote manner, or state; as—

Das Kind trat weinend und
schreiend ins Zimmer.

The child entered the room weep-
ing and crying.

Sie sah mich bittend an.

She looked at me in a suppliant way.

Schweigend hörte sie mir zu.

She listened to me in silence.

In more elevated language we find the Present Participle even thus employed in connection with words governed by it as direct or indirect objects. It is then used elliptically, and expresses simultaneous action with another verb following it as the predicate of a second clause; as—

Dies Alles bei mir denkend, schlief
ich ein. (Schiller.)

Thinking of all this, I fell asleep

Seinem Vater gehorchend,
verließ er das Haus.

Obedying his father, he left the
house.

IV.

The English Participle in -ing, however, so frequently employed in adverbial clauses of time, cause, and manner, must generally be translated into German by the help of a conjunction and a finite verb, i.e. one with a personal termination.

A. To express time the conjunctions *als* (when), *nachdem* (after), and *indem* (while, whilst), must be used; as—

Hearing his opponent speak in
this way, his features assumed
an expression of contempt.

Als er seinen Gegner so sprechen
hörte, nahmen seine Züge den
Ausdruck der Verachtung an.

Having given his orders, the officer rode quickly away.

Nachdem er seine Befehle erteilt hatte, ritt der Officier schnell von dannen.

Looking at me in a suppliant manner, a tear glittered in her eye.

Indem sie mich bittend ansah, glänzte eine Thräne in ihrem Auge.

Also *während* (while, whilst) is used, but whilst *indem* merely denotes simultaneousness, *während* expresses as well the *duration* of an action simultaneous with another; as—

Abandoning herself entirely to her grief, she forgets her duties as a wife and mother.

Während sie sich ganz ihrem Schmerze hingiebt, vergißt sie ihre Pflichten als Gattin und Mutter.

Not unfrequently we find the **English Participle preceded by a conjunction**, but it is a matter of course that this has no influence on the rendering of such passages; as—

After having spoken a few words of farewell, he embarked.

Nachdem er einige Worte des Abschieds gesprochen hatte, schiffte er sich ein.

I saw it *when passing* the house this morning.

Ich sah es, als ich heute Morgen beim Hause vorüberging.

Did you not notice it while speaking to her?

Haben Sie es nicht bemerkt, während Sie mit ihr sprachen?

B. To express **cause** the conjunctions *da* (as, since), *weil* (because), and *indem* (since) are used. But whilst *da* denotes a *logical* cause from which we may draw an inference, *weil* denotes a *real* cause, a motive in a *definite* manner. *Indem* likewise implies causality, but in a less definite manner than *da* and *weil*.

Examples.

Showing a good capacity for a teacher, he was sent to a Grammar School.

Da er gute Anlagen zum Lehrer zeigte, wurde er auf das Gymnasium geschickt.

Being always just, the king is loved by his people.

Weil er stets gerecht ist, wird der König von seinem Volke geliebt.

Hoping that his business would soon lead him to Hamburg, he promised to pay me a visit.

Indem er hoffte, daß seine Geschäfte ihn bald nach Hamburg führen würden, versprach er, mich zu besuchen.

C. The conjunction **indem** with a finite verb is also frequently employed for rendering the English Participle in -ing used in adverbial clauses of **manner**; as—

Supporting himself on her arm, he slowly ascended the stairs.

Indem er sich auf ihren Arm stützte, stieg er langsam die Treppe hinauf.

He left the prison, *having disguised himself* in the habit of a monk.

Er verließ das Gefängniß, indem er sich als Mönch verkleidete.

V.

Sentences containing a Participle in -ing which qualifies a preceding noun or pronoun are generally to be turned into relative clauses, but in some cases we may make use of the *attributive* construction explained in § 155, I.

Examples.

The vessel, *coming* straight upon us, showed the German flag, and gave us signals of having noticed us.

Das Schiff, welches gerade auf uns zukam, zeigte die deutsche Flagge und gab uns Zeichen, daß es uns bemerkt hatte.

Or with the attributive construction: Das gerade auf uns zukommende Schiff zeigte die deutsche Flagge und gab uns Zeichen, daß es uns bemerkt hatte.

At last his brother had gained a large fortune, but *he, having passed* his days in idleness and profligacy, was almost reduced to beggary.

Sein Bruder hatte sich endlich ein großes Vermögen erworben, aber er, der seine Tage in Trägheit und Verworfenheit verbracht hatte, war fast in die größte Armuth versetzt.

§ 155.

B. THE PAST PARTICIPLE,

And the Translation of the English Perfect Participle (written), commonly called Past Participle.

I.

The German Past Participle is very frequently used in an *attributive* relation to a noun. It partakes both of the nature of a *verb* and of an *adjective*, and the rules given for the declension and comparison of

adjectives apply in all respects to Past Participles used adjectively. But whilst in English Perfect Participles are placed both before and after the nouns they qualify, the German Past Participle, as a rule, must precede the qualified noun.

Examples.

The <i>assembled</i> Parliament declared that the king had acted contrary to the existing constitution.	Das versammelte Parlament erklärte, daß der König der bestehenden Verfassung zuwider gehandelt habe.
The <i>fallen</i> enemy lay pleading at his victor's feet.	Der gefallene Feind lag stehend zu Füßen seines Siegers.
Queen Louisa of Prussia is <i>the most beloved</i> princess Germany has ever had.	Die Königin Luise von Preußen ist die geliebteste Fürstin, die Deutschland je gehabt hat.
We met with a ship <i>bound</i> for Bremen.	Wir trafen ein nach Bremen bestimmtes Schiff.

This last sentence, however, may also be translated by the help of a relative pronoun, thus:

Wir trafen ein Schiff, *welches* nach Bremen bestimmt war,

which latter construction we must frequently employ for translating the English Perfect Participle qualifying a preceding noun. But the first way of translating the phrase is certainly more concise than the second, and it is to be preferred in all cases where the *attributive* construction would not be too lengthy.

It may here be pointed out that it is one of the most striking peculiarities of German Grammar to have all qualifying parts placed before the word qualified. This, as long as it is not too much indulged in, imparts to the construction great conciseness and vigour, and avoids the too frequent use of relative pronouns, which, contrary to English construction, cannot be omitted in German.

Examples.

When the fleet, <i>favoured</i> by the finest weather, was about to set sail, there arose a shout of joy proceeding from many thousands of voices, and resounding mightily from the shore.	Als die von dem schönsten Wetter begünstigte Flotte im Begriff war abzufegeln, erhob sich ein von vielen tausend Stimmen erschallender Jubelruf, von dem das Ufer mächtig wiederhallte.
--	---

Her love, so richly *bestowed* upon the child, was ill paid when the latter grew up to manhood.

Ihre dem Kinde so reichlich erwiesene Liebe wurde schlecht vergolten, als dasselbe zum Manne heranwuchs.

The child, gently *sleeping* in his mother's arms, was suddenly roused by his father's noisy entrance.

Daß in den Armen der Mutter sanft schlafende Kind wurde plötzlich durch den lärmenden Eintritt des Vaters aufgeweckt.

The last sentence furnishes one more example of the attributive construction with the *Present Participle* (see § 154).

II.

The *Past Participle* is often used elliptically to denote an existing *state* or *condition*; as—

Von dunklen Ahnungen erfüllt, betrat er die eroberte Festung.

Filled with dark forebodings, he entered the conquered fortress.

Von dem Volke bestürmt, gab er endlich nach.

Besieged by the people, he gave way at last.

III.

The *Past Participle* is often used in *proverbs*; as—

Frisch gewagt, halb gewonnen.

Well begun, half done.

Muth verloren, Alles verloren.

Courage lost, all lost.

IV.

The *German Past Participle* of some intransitive verbs denoting motion is used *adverbially* with the verb *kommen*, to come, in cases where in English the Participle in *-ing* is employed; as—

gelaufen kommen, to come running.

gefahren kommen, to come driving.

geflogen kommen, to come flying.

gesprungen kommen, to come jumping.

In the same way we find it employed in the phrase *verloren gehen*, to get lost, and in such phrases as—

gekämmt, gewaschen, gepuht kommen, to come combed, washed, gaily dressed,

where, however, the original *Past Participle* has lost the nature of a verb, and has become a true adjective.

V.

The Past Participle is sometimes employed imperatively; as—

Ausgetrunken!	Empty your glasses (cups, etc.)!
Nicht mehr geklagt!	No more complaining!
Nicht mehr gespielt!	No more playing!

7. The Formation of Nouns from Infinitives and Present Participles of Verbs.

§ 156. The German language makes frequent use of the Infinitive Present of verbs to form **abstract nouns**, whilst the English language uses the Verbal in *-ing* for that purpose. Such nouns are always of the neuter gender; as—

Das Kommen.	Coming.
Das Gehen.	Going.
Das Reiten.	Riding.
Das Essen und Trinken.	Eating and drinking.
Das Spielen ist den Kindern unentbehrlich.	Playing is indispensable to chil- dren.

The Present Participle of verbs is often used for forming **concretes**; as—

Der Lesende.	The reader.
Die Genesende.	The lady convalescent.

IV. The Government of the Verb.

1. Verbs requiring the Predicate in the Nominative.

§ 157. The verbs *bleiben* (to remain), *heißen* (to be called), *scheinen* (to appear, seem), *sein* (to be), and *werden* (to become, to be), require the predicate in the Nominative Case; as—

Jener Knabe ist und bleibt ein Laugenichts.	That boy is and ever will be a good-for-nothing-fellow.
Der König von Preußen heißt Wilhelm.	The king of Prussia is called William.
Mein Freund Heinrich wird Kauf- mann werden.	My friend Henry is going to be a merchant.

§ 158. The following verbs, which govern two Accusatives in the active voice, require the predicate in the *Nominative* when used *passively*:

nennen and heißen, to name, to call;

schimpfen and schelten, to scold, to give an opprobrious name;

taufen, to baptize.

Examples.

Er nannte ihn einen Schurken. He called him a scoundrel.

(Here are two accusatives, „ihn“ and „einen Schurken,“ and the verb is used in the active voice.)

Unsere Magd wird Marie genannt. Our servant is called Mary.

(Here the predicate „Marie“ stands in the nominative, and the verb is used passively.)

§ 159. The verbs ernennen (to appoint), machen (to make), and erwählen (to choose, to elect), require in German the preposition *zu* contracted with the article into *zum*, whilst in English they govern *two* Nominatives in the *passive voice*; as—

Der Freund meines Vaters ist zum
Professor an der Universität Jena
ernannt worden.

My father's friend has been ap-
pointed professor at the Uni-
versity of Jena.

Man hat den Herrn Doctor Mahn
zum Abgeordneten erwählt.

Doctor Mahn has been elected a
member of Parliament.

2. Verbs Governing the Dative of the Person.

§ 160. The following is a list of verbs requiring in German the *Dative of the Person* or of the thing, some of which, however, govern the Accusative in English.

Examples.

Die Schüler dankten ihrem
Lehrer für seine Güte.

The pupils thanked their master
for his kindness.

Die Minister haben dem Könige
gerathen, das Gesetz zu unter-
zeichnen.

The ministers have advised the
king to sign the bill (das Gesetz,
law, bill).

Sein Betragen hat mir im höchsten
Grade mißfallen.

His conduct has displeased me in
the highest degree.

Man wollte dem Gefangenen
nicht glauben, denn die Beweise
waren gegen ihn.

They would not believe the
prisoner, for the evidence was
against him.

abratthen, to dissuade.
 anbieten, to offer.
 anhangen, to be attached to
 anstehen, to suit.
 antworten, to answer.
 ausweichen, to evade.
 befehlen, to command.
 begegnen, to meet, to happen.
 behagen, to please.
 bekommen (impers.), to agree
 with.

beipflichten, }
 beistimmen, } to agree with.

bevorstehen, to impend.

beistehen, to assist.

bringen, to bring.

danken, to thank.

dienen, to serve.

drohen, to threaten.

einfallen, to occur.

einleuchten, to be evident.

entgehen, }
 entkommen, } to escape from.

entlaufen, to run away.

entreißen, to snatch away.

entsprechen, to correspond with.

erlauben, to allow, to permit.

erzählen, to relate.

fehlen, }
 mangeln, } to be wanting.

fluchen, to curse.

folgen, to follow.

fröhnen, to indulge.

gebühren, to be due.

gefallen, to please.

gehörchen, to obey.

gehören, to belong to.

gelingen, to succeed.

genügen, to suffice.

gereichen, to tend, to redound to.

gewähren, to grant.

geziemen, to become.

glauben, to believe.

gleichén, to be like.

helfen, to help.

huldigen, to do homage.

leisten, to render.

liefern, to furnish.

mißfallen, to displease.

mißtrauen, to distrust.

nehmen, to take from.

nützen, to be useful.

rathén, to advise.

sagen, to tell.

schaden, }
 wehe thun, } to hurt.

scheinen, to seem.

schénken, to make a present of.

schmeicheln, to flatter.

steuern, to check.

trauen, to trust.

trogen, to bid defiance.

unterliegen, to succumb.

sich unterwerfen, to submit.

verschaffen, to procure.

verzeihen, to pardon.

vorangehen, to precede.

vorbeugen, to obviate.

vorlesen, to read to a person.

wehren, to prevent.

weichen, to give way.

widersprechen, to contradict.

widerstehen, }
 sich widersetzen, } to resist.

willfahren, to grant.

wohlwollen, to favour.

zuhören, to listen to.

zukommen, to fall to one's share,

And most intransitive verbs with the prefixes ab, an, auf, bei, ein, entgegen, nach, unter, vor, wider, and zu.

3. Verbs Governing the Genitive.

§ 161. The following verbs require the object to stand in the Genitive, but some of them are also constructed with a preposition, or may be used with an Accusative:

bedürfen, to be in want of, to need (also governs the accusative).	spotten, to mock at (also with the preposition über).
ermangeln, to be deficient in.	(lachen, to laugh at, is used with the genitive of the object, but more often with the preposition über.)
gedenken, to think of.	
harren, to wait for (also with auf).	
schonen, to spare (sometimes governs the accusative).	

Also the following reflexive verbs govern the object in the Genitive:

sich annehmen, to take care of.	sich entsinnen, } to remember.
sich bedienen, to make use of.	sich erinnern, }
sich befehligen, to apply oneself to.	sich erbarmen, to have mercy.
sich bemächtigen, to seize.	sich erwehren, to defend oneself
sich entäußern, to resign.	from, to refrain from.
sich enthalten, to abstain from.	sich rühmen, to be proud of.
sich erfreuen, to enjoy.	sich schämen, to be ashamed of
sich entledigen, to acquit oneself of.	(sometimes with über).
sich entschlagen, to get rid of.	sich versehen, to expect, to look for.

Examples.

Der Feind bemächtigte sich des Dorfes.	The enemy took possession of the village.
Erbarme dich meiner!	Take pity on me!
Sie gedenkt der Tage der Vergangenheit.	She thinks of the days of the Past.
Er schonte seiner nicht.	He did not spare him.
Können Sie sich dessen nicht entsinnen?	Can you not remember that?
Sie müssen sich einer besseren Aussprache befehligen.	You must apply yourself to get a better pronunciation.

§ 162. The following verbs require the thing to stand in the Genitive, and the person in the Accusative:

anklagen, } to accuse of, to charge	überheben (Einen einer Sache über-
beschuldigen, } with.	heben), to save one from any-
berauben, to rob.	thing, to excuse one from
entbinden, to release.	doing a thing.
entkleiden, to deprive of.	überführen, to convict.
entsetzen, to discharge.	versichern, to assure.
entwöhnen, to get rid of (a habit).	würdigen, to favour.

Examples.

Man beschuldigte ihn des Diebstahls.	He was accused of theft.
Er wurde des Verbrechens überführt.	He was convicted of the crime.
Der Gesandte würdigte ihn keines Blickes.	The ambassador did not favour him with a single look.
Die Feinde beraubten meinen Vater seines Geldes und seiner Kleider.	The enemy robbed my father of his money and of his clothes.
Er versicherte mich seiner Hochachtung und Freundschaft.	He assured me of his respect and friendship.
Sie müssen sich dieses Fehlers entwöhnen.	You must get rid of this habit.
Der Kaiser entkleidete ihn seiner Würde.	The emperor deprived him of his dignity.

APPENDIX.

ALPHABET

APPENDIX.

I. THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS

(See §§ 11-29 of the Grammar.)

THE ANCIENT DECLENSION.

§ 1.

FORM I.

Genitive Singular, es or s. Nominative Plural, e.

To this form belong—

A. **Most Monosyllabic Masculine Nouns.** (For exceptions see § 3, C; § 4, B; § 5, B.)

The *vowel of the stem* of most of these nouns is modified in the *Plural* (see § 19 of the Grammar).

Examples.

	<i>Genitive Singular.</i>	<i>Nominative Plural.</i>
der Tisch, table,	des Tisch e s,	die Tisch e.
der Arzt, physician,	des Arzt e s,	die Arzt e.
der Kopf, head,	des Kopf e s,	die Köpfe.
der Plan, plan,	des Plan e s,	die Pläne.

The following is a list of those masculine monosyllabic nouns which do not modify the vowel of the stem in the *Plural*:

	<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
der Aal, eel,	Aale.	der Grad, degree,	Grade.
der Aar, eagle,	Aare.	der Gurt, girdle,	Gurte.
der Arm, arm,	Arme.	der Hag, hedge,	Häge.
der Bord, board,	Borde.	der Hall, sound,	Halle.
der Born, well,	Borne.	der Halm, stalk,	Hälme.
der Docht, wick,	Dochte.	der Hauch, breath,	Hauche.
der Dolch, dagger,	Dolche.	der Horst, eyry,	Horste.
der Dom, cathedral,	Dome.	der Hort, place of refuge,	Horte.

	<i>Plural.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
der Huf, hoof,	Hufe.	der Quast, tassel,	Quaste.
der Hund, dog,	Hunde.	der Schuft, rogue,	Schufte.
der Kalk, lime,	Kalke.	der Schuh, shoe,	Schuh.
der Kork, cork,	Korke.	der Spath, spar,	Spathe.
der Krah'n, crane,	Krahne.	der Staar, cataract,	Staare.
der Lachs, salmon,	Lachse.	der Stahl, steel,	Stahle.
der Lack, ^{lac (a kind of)} ^{varnish),}	Lacke.	der Stoff, stuff,	Stoffe.
der Laut, sound,	Laute.	der Strauß, ostrich,	{ Strauße (§ 10).
der Luchs, lynx,	Luchse.	der Sund, strait,	Sunde.
der Molch, salamander,	Molche.	der Takt, bar in music,	Takte.
der Mond, moon,	Monde (§ 10).	der Taft, taffeta,	Tafte.
der Mord, murder,	Morde.	der Tag, day,	Tage.
der Park, park,	Parke.	der Talc, talc,	Talke.
der Pfad, path,	Pfade.	der Thran, train-oil,	Thrane.
der Pol, pole,	Pole.	der Thron, throne,	Throne.
der Puls, pulse,	Pulse.	der Torf, peat,	Torfe.
der Punkt, point,	Punkte.	der Tusch, ^(flourish of) ^{trumpets,}	Tusche.
der Punsch, punch,	Punsche.	der Zoll, inch,	Zolle (§ 10).
der Quarz, quartz,	Quarze.		

B. All Monosyllabic Neuter Nouns not included in the lists of § 3, A, and § 4, C.

Examples.

	<i>Genitive Singular.</i>	<i>Nominative Plural.</i>
das Jahr, year,	des Jahre s,	die Jahre.
das Fest, feast,	des Feste s,	die Feste.
das Schaf, sheep,	des Schafe s,	die Schafe.
das Knie, knee,	des Knie e s,	die Knie e.

Of these nouns only the following *two change the vowel in the Plural*:

	<i>Genitive Singular.</i>	<i>Nominative Plural.</i>
das Boot, boat,	des Boot e s,	die B ö t e (see § 8).
das Floß, raft,	des Floße s,	die F l ö s s e.

C. Feminine Nouns originally monosyllabic.

The vowel of the stem is always modified in the Plural. The following is a list of these nouns:

<i>Nom. Singular.</i>	<i>Nom. Plural.</i>	<i>Nom. Singular.</i>	<i>Nom. Plural.</i>
die Angst, anguish,	Angste.	die Luft, air,	Lüste.
die Art, axe,	Arte.	die Lust, lust,	Lüste.
die Bank, bench,	Bänke (§ 10).	die Macht, power,	Mächte.
die Braut, bride,	Bräute.	die Magd, maid,	Mägde.
die Brust, breast,	Brüste.	die Maus, mouse,	Mäuse.
die Faust, fist,	Fäuste.	die Nacht, night,	Nächte.
die Frucht, fruit,	Früchte.	die Nuß, nut,	Nüsse.
die Gans, goose,	Gänse.	die Sau, sow,	Säue (§ 10).
die Grust, grave,	Grüste.	die Schnur, string,	Schnüre.
die Hand, hand,	Hände.	die Schwellst, swelling,	Schwülste.
die Haut, skin,	Häute.	die Stadt, town,	Städte.
die Klust, cleft,	Klüfte.	die Wand, wall,	Wände.
die Kraft, strength,	Kräfte.	die Wulst, padding,	Wülste.
die Kuh, cow,	Kühe.	die Wurst, sausage,	Würste.
die Kunst, art,	Künste.	die Zunft, guild,	Zünfte.
die Laus, louse,	Läuse.		

*D. Also the compounds of die **Flucht**, flight, and **kunst**, coming; as—*

die Ausflucht, subterfuge,	pl. Ausflüchte.
die Ankunst, arrival,	pl. Ankünfte.

The compounds of *Macht* form the plural in *machten*:

die Ohnmacht, swoon,	pl. Ohnmachten.
die Vollmacht, full power,	pl. Vollmachten.

*E. Dissyllabic Masculine Nouns with the prefix **Be** and **Ver**.*

The vowel of the stem is often modified in the Plural.

Examples.

	<i>Genitive Singular.</i>	<i>Nominative Plural.</i>
der Befehl, command,	des Befehls,	die Befehle.
der Beschluß, resolution,	des Beschlusses,	die Beschlüsse.
der Verlust, loss,	des Verlustes,	die Verluste.
der Verweis, reproof,	des Verweises,	die Verweise.

*F. Nouns ending in **niß**, and **sal**, and Masculine and Neuter Nouns ending in **ling**, **ing**, **ig**, **rich**, **icht**, **and**, and **at**; as—*

	<i>Genitive Singular.</i>	<i>Nominative Plural.</i>
die Finsterniß, darkness,	der Finsterniß,	die Finsternisse.
das Erkenntniß, verdict,	des Erkenntnißes,	die Erkenntnisse.
die Trübsal, affliction,	der Trübsal,	die Trübsale.
der Jüngling, young man,	des Jünglings,	die Jünglinge.
der König, king,	des Königs,	die Könige.
der Fähnrich, ensign,	des Fähnrichs,	die Fähnriche.
der Heiland, saviour,	des Heilandes,	die Heilande.
der Monat, month,	des Monats,	die Monate.

G. Nouns with the prefix Ge and ending with the root-syllable.

The vowel of the stem is sometimes modified in the Plural.

Examples.

	<i>Genitive Singular.</i>	<i>Nominative Plural.</i>
das Gebet, prayer,	des Gebetes,	die Gebete, from beten.
der Gesang, song,	des Gesanges,	die Gesänge, from singen.
das Gespräch, conversation,	des Gesprächs,	die Gespräche, from sprechen.

H. Many Foreign Nouns, especially titles and names of inanimate objects.

The vowel of the stem is sometimes modified in the Plural.

Examples.

	<i>Genitive Singular.</i>	<i>Nominative Plural.</i>
der General, general,	des Generals,	die Generäle.
der Rubin, ruby,	des Rubins,	die Rubine.
das Arsenal, arsenal,	des Arsensals,	die Arsenale.
das Parlament, parliament,	des Parlaments,	die Parlamente.
der Kardinal, cardinal,	des Kardinals,	die Kardinäle.
der Altar, altar,	des Altars,	die Altäre.
der Traktat, treaty,	des Traktates,	die Traktate.
das Instrument, instrument,	des Instrumentes,	die Instrumente.

§ 2.

FORM II.

Genitive Singular, s. Nominative Plural, no ending.

To this form belong—

A. The two Feminine Nouns die Mutter and die Tochter.
(See § 26 of the Grammar.)

B. Masculine and Neuter Nouns ending in el, er, en, and Diminutives in chen and lein. (For exceptions see § 4, *A*, and § 5, *E*.)

The vowel of the stem of masculine nouns is often modified in the Plural.

Examples.

	<i>Genitive Singular.</i>	<i>Nominative Plural.</i>
der Spiegel, looking-glass,	des Spiegel s,	die Spiegel.
der Bruder, brother,	des Bruder s,	die Br ü der.
der Garten, garden,	des Garten s,	die G ä rten.
das Täubchen, little dove,	des Täubchen s,	die Täubchen.
das Fräulein, young lady,	des Fräulein s,	die Fräulein.

The following nouns modify the vowel of the stem in the Plural:

<i>Nom. Singular.</i>	<i>Nom. Plural.</i>	<i>Nom. Singular.</i>	<i>Nom. Plural.</i>
der Acker, acre, field,	die Aecker.	der Mangel, want,	die Mängel.
der Apfel, apple,	die Äpfel.	der Mantel, cloak,	die Mäntel.
der Boden, garret,	die Böden.	der Nagel, nail,	die Nägel.
der Bruder, brother,	die Brüder.	der Ofen, stove,	die Ofen.
der Faden, thread,	die Fäden.	der Sattel, saddle,	die Sättel.
der Garten, garden,	die Gärten.	der Schaden, damage,	die Schäden.
der Graben, ditch,	die Gräben.	der Schnabel, beak,	die Schnäbel.
der Hafen, haven,	die Häfen.	der Schwager, {brother- in-law, }	die Schwäger.
der Hammel, wether,	die Hammel.		
der Hammer, hammer,	die Hämmer.	der Vater, father,	die Väter.
der Handel, commerce,	die Händel.	der Vogel, bird,	die Vögel.
der Laden, shop,	die Läden (§ 10).		
but, shutter,	die Laden (§ 10).		

And the only Neuter Noun of this class:

das Kloster, cloister, pl. die Kl ö ster.

C. Neuter Nouns ending in e with the prefix Ge; as—

	<i>Plural.</i>
das Gebirge, range of mountains,	die Gebirge.
das Gebäude, building,	die Gebäude.
das Gemälde, picture,	die Gemälde.
das Gefilde, fields,	die Gefilde.

D. The noun der Käse, cheese, Gen. des Käses, Nom. pl. die Käse.

§ 3.

FORM III.

Genitive Singular, es or s. Nominative Plural, er.

The vowel of the stem is always modified in the Plural.

To this form belong—

A. Most Monosyllabic Neuter Nouns. The following is a list of them. (For exceptions see § 1, B, and § 4, C.)

<i>Nom. Singular.</i>	<i>Nom. Plural.</i>	<i>Nom. Singular.</i>	<i>Nom. Plural.</i>
das Amt, office,	die Aemter.	das Kalb, calf,	die Kälber.
das Bad, bath,	die Bäder.	das Kind, child,	die Kinder.
das Band, ribbon,	die Bänder.	das Kleid, dress,	die Kleider.
das Bild, picture,	die Bilder.	das Korn, corn, grain,	die Körner.
das Blatt, leaf,	die Blätter.	das Kraut, herb,	die Kräuter.
das Brett, board,	die Bretter.	das Lamm, lamb,	die Lämmer.
das Buch, book,	die Bücher.	das Land, land,	die Länder.
das Dach, roof,	die Dächer.	das Licht, light,	die Lichter.
das Ding, creature,	die Dinger.	das Lied, song,	die Lieder.
das Dorf, village,	die Dörfer.	das Loch, hole,	die Löcher.
das Ei, egg,	die Eier.	das Maul, mouth,	die Mäuler.
das Fach, shelf,	die Fächer.	das Nest, nest,	die Nester.
das Faß, cask,	die Fässer.	das Pfand, pledge,	die Pfänder.
das Feld, field,	die Felder.	das Rad, wheel,	die Räder.
das Geld, money,	die Gelder.	das Reis, twig,	die Reiser.
das Glas, glass,	die Gläser.	das Rind, young ox,	die Rinder.
das Glied, limb,	die Glieder.	das Schild, signboard,	die Schilber.
das Grab, grave,	die Gräber.	das Schloß, castle,	die Schlösser.
das Gras, grass,	die Gräser.	das Schwert, sword,	die Schwerter.
das Gut, property,	die Güter.	das Thal, dale,	die Thäler.
das Haus, house,	die Häuser.	das Tuch, cloth,	die Tücher.
das Holz, wood,	die Hölzer.	das Volk, people,	die Völker.
das Horn, horn,	die Hörner.	das Weib, woman,	die Weiber.
das Huhn, hen,	die Hühner.	das Wort, word,	die Wörter.

NOTE.—Das Band, das Ding, das Horn, das Land, das Licht, das Wort, have a double plural form, each having a different meaning (see § 10).

B. All Nouns ending in thum.

Examples.

<i>Gen. Singular.</i>	<i>Nom. Plural.</i>
des Kaisertbum s,	die Kaiserth ü m e r.
des Heiligtbum s,	die Heiligtb ü m e r.

C. Ten Masculine Nouns:

<i>Nom. Singular.</i>	<i>Gen. Singular.</i>	<i>Nom. Plural.</i>
der Bösewicht, malefactor,	des Bösewichtes,	die Bösewichter (last component der Wicht).
der Geist, ghost, mind,	des Geistes,	die Geister.
der Gott, God,	des Gottes,	die Götter.
der Leib, body,	des Leibes,	die Leiber.
der Mann, man,	des Mannes,	die Männer.
der Ort, place,	des Ortes,	die Oerter (§ 10).
der Rand, edge,	des Randes,	die Ränder.
der Vormund, guardian,	des Vormundes,	die Vormünder.
der Wald, forest,	des Waldes,	die Wälder.
der Wurm, worm,	des Wurmes,	die Würmer.

D. The following Neuter Nouns:

<i>Nom. Singular.</i>	<i>Gen. Singular.</i>	<i>Nom. Plural.</i>
das Denkmal, monument,	des Denkmals,	die Denkmäler.
das Gemach, apartment,	des Gemaches,	die Gemächer.
das Gemüth, mind,	des Gemüthes,	die Gemüther.
das Geschlecht, race, sex,	des Geschlechtes,	die Geschlechter.
das Gesicht, face,	des Gesichtes,	die Gesichter.
das Gespenst, spectre,	des Gespenstes,	die Gespenster.
das Gewand, garment,	des Gewandes,	die Gewänder.
das Hospital, hospital,	des Hospitals,	die Hospitäler.
das Regiment, regiment,	des Regimentes,	die Regimenter.

§ 4.

FORM IV.

Genitive Singular, es or s. Nominative Plural, en or n.

The vowel of the stem is never modified.

To this form belong—

A.

<i>Nom. Singular.</i>	<i>Gen. Singular.</i>	<i>Nom. Plural.</i>
der Gewatter, godfather,	des Gewatter s,	die Gewatter n.
der Juwel, jewel,	des Juwel s,	die Juwel e n.
der Lorbeer, laurel,	des Lorbeer s,	die Lorbeer e n.
der Muskel, muscle,	des Muskel s,	die Muskel n.
der Pantoffel, slipper,	des Pantoffel s,	die Pantoffel n.
der Stachel, sting,	des Stachel s,	die Stachel n.
der Vetter, cousin,	des Vetter s,	die Vetter n.

B.

<i>Nom. Singular.</i>	<i>Gen. Singular.</i>	<i>Nom. Plural.</i>
der Dorn, thorn,	des Dorn e s,	die Dorn e n.
der Forst, forest,	des Forst e s,	die Forst e n.
der Mast, mast,	des Mast e s,	die Mast e n.
der Pfau, peacock,	des Pfau e s,	die Pfau e n.
der Psalm, psalm,	des Psalm s,	die Psalm e n.
der Schmerz, pain,	des Schmerz e s,	die Schmerz e n.
der See, lake,	des See s,	die See n.
der Sporn, spur,	des Sporn e s,	{ die Spornen and Spore n.
der Staat, state,	des Staat e s,	die Staat e n.
der Strahl, ray,	des Strahl e s,	die Strahl e n.
der Zins, interest,	des Zins e s,	die Zins e n.

C.

das Bett, bed,	des Bett e s,	die Bett e n.
das Hemd, shirt,	des Hemd e s,	die Hemd e n.
das Ohr, ear,	des Ohr e s,	die Ohr e n.

D.

der Dä'mon, demon,	des Dä'mon s,	die Dämo'n e n.
das Insekt', insect,	des Insekt' s,	die Insekt' e n.
der Kon'sul, consul,	des Kon'sul s,	die Kon'sul n.

E.

das Auge, eye,	des Auge s,	die Auge n.
das Ende, end,	des Ende s,	die Ende n.

F.

der Nachbar, neighbour,	des Nachbar s,	die Nachbar n.
-------------------------	----------------	----------------

*G. Foreign Nouns ending in or.**Examples.*

<i>Nom. Singular.</i>	<i>Gen. Singular.</i>	<i>Nom. Plural.</i>
der Direc'tor, director,	des Direc'tor s,	die Directo'r e n.
der Doc'tor, doctor,	des Doc'tor s,	die Docto'r e n.
der Profes'sor, professor,	des Profes'sor s,	die Professo'r e n.
der Rec'tor, rector,	des Rec'tor s,	die Recto'r e n.

(Notice the different accent in Singular and Plural, as indicated above.)

§ 5. THE MODERN DECLENSION.

Genitive Singular, en or n. Nominative Plural, en or n.

The vowel of the stem is never modified.

To this declension belong—

A. All Masculine Nouns ending in *e*, representing persons and animals; as—

<i>Nom. Singular.</i>	<i>Gen. Singular.</i>	<i>Nom. Plural.</i>
der Affe, ape,	des Affe n,	die Affe n.
der Falke, falcon,	des Falke n,	die Falke n.
der Hase, hare,	des Hase n,	die Hase n.
der Heide, heathen,	des Heide n,	die Heide n.
der Löwe, lion,	des Löwe n,	die Löwe n.
der Nefse, nephew,	des Nefse n,	die Nefse n.
der Pole, Pole,	des Pole n,	die Pole n.
der Zeuge, witness,	des Zeuge n,	die Zeuge n.

B. The following Masculine Nouns. These originally ended in an unaccented *e*, but have lost it in modern times:

<i>Nom. Singular.</i>	<i>Nom. Plural.</i>
der Advocat', lawyer,	die Advocat'en.
der Ahn, ancestor,	die Ahnen.
der Antagonist', antagonist,	die Antagoni'sten.
der Astronom', astronomer,	die Astrono'men.
der Bär, bear,	die Bären.
der Barbar', barbarian,	die Barba'ren.
der Consonant', consonant,	die Consonant'en.
der Christ, Christian,	die Christen.
der Demagog', demagogue,	die Demago'gen.
der Ducat', ducat,	die Duca'ten.
der Elephant', elephant,	die Elephan'ten.
der Fürst, prince,	die Fürsten.
der Geograph', geographer,	die Geogra'phen.
der Gesell', companion,	die Gesel'len.
der Graf, count,	die Grafen.
der Held, hero.	die Helden.
der Hirt, herdsman,	die Hirten.

<i>Nom. Singular.</i>	<i>Nom. Plural.</i>
der Husar', hussar,	die Husa'ren.
der Idiot', idiot,	die Idio'ten.
der Jesuit', Jesuit,	die Jesui'ten.
der Katholik', Catholic,	die Katholi'ken.
der Klient', client,	die Klien'ten.
der Komet', comet,	die Kome'ten.
der Leu, lion,	die Leuen.
der Monarch', monarch,	die Monar'chen.
der Mensch, man,	die Menschen.
der Mohr, moor,	die Mohren.
der Methodist', methodist,	die Methodi'sten.
der Narr, fool,	die Narren.
der Och's, ox,	die Och'sen.
der Patient', patient,	die Paticn'ten.
der Patriarch', patriarch,	die Patriar'chen.
der Philosoph', philosopher,	die Philoso'phen.
der Planet', planet,	die Plane'ten.
der Poet', poet,	die Poe'ten.
der Prälat', prelate,	die Präla'ten.
der Prinz, prince,	die Prinzen.
der Protestant', protestant,	die Protestan'ten.
der Quadrant', quadrant,	die Quadran'ten.
der Soldat', soldier,	die Solda'ten.
der Spatz, sparrow,	die Spaz'en.
der Student', student,	die Studen'ten.
der Tartar', Tartar,	die Tarta'ren.
der Theolog', theologian,	die Theolo'gen.
der Thor, fool,	die Thoren.
der Tyrann', tyrant,	die Tyran'nen.
der Un'gar, Hungarian,	die Un'garn.
der Un'terthan, subject,	die Un'terthanen.
der Vor'fahr, ancestor,	die Vor'fahren.

C. Almost all Feminine Nouns of more than one syllable.

(For exceptions see § 1, *D* and *F*, and § 2, *A*.)

(See § 15 of the Grammar.)

Examples.

<i>Nom. Singular.</i>	<i>Gen. Singular.</i>	<i>Nom. Plural.</i>
die Armee', army,	der Armee',	die Armee'n.
die Famī'lie, family,	der Famī'lie,	die Famī'lie n.
die Gabel, fork,	der Gabel,	die Gabel n.
die Li'lie, lily,	der Li'lie,	die Li'lie n.
die Mühe, trouble,	der Mühe,	die Mühe n.
die Seele, soul,	der Seele,	die Seele n.
die Tafel, slate,	der Tafel,	die Tafel n.
die Tugend, virtue,	der Tugend,	die Tugend e n.
die Verbin'dung, alliance,	der Verbin'dung,	die Verbin'dung e n.

D. Those Feminine Monosyllabic Nouns which are not originally monosyllabic (see § 1, C), but which formerly have had two syllables ending with an unaccented *e*.

The following are the principal ones:

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	die Art, the kind.	die Art e n, the kinds.
Gen.	der Art, of the kind.	der Art e n, of the kinds.
Dat.	der Art, to the kind.	den Art e n, to the kinds.
Acc.	die Art, the kind.	die Art e n, the kinds.
die Bahn, path.	die Kur, cure.	die Spur, trace.
die Brut, brood.	die Last, burden.	die That, deed.
die Bucht, bay.	die Mark, boundary.	die Thür, door.
die Burg, castle.	die Pflicht, duty.	die Tracht, dress.
die Fahrt, drive.	die Post, post.	die Trift, pasture.
die Flur, field.	die Qual, torment.	die Uhr, watch.
die Flut, flood.	die Schaar, crowd.	die Wahl, choice.
die Form, form.	die Schlacht, battle.	die Welt, world.
die Fracht, freight.	die Schrift, writing.	die Zahl, number.
die Frau, woman.	die Schuld, debt.	die Zeit, time.

(All these nouns are declined like *die Art*.)

E. The two nouns *der Bauer*, the peasant, and *der Baier*, the Bavarian.

ADDITIONAL REMARKS ON THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

§ 6. Compound Nouns form their declension according to the last component: *der Hausvater*, pl. *die Hausväter*; from *das Haus* and *der Vater*. (See the note to § 10 of the Grammar.)

§ 7. The **Vocative** is always like the **Nominative**.

§ 8. Nouns with a double vowel drop *one* of the vowels in the Plural when they receive the *modification*; as—

der Saal, the saloon, pl. die Säle.

§ 9. Mann, man, is in the plural Männer, men, but when it is compounded with other nouns, and is used in an indefinite way, it takes Leute, people, for its plural; as—

der Edelmann, nobleman, pl. die Edelleute.

der Kaufmann, merchant, pl. die Kaufleute.

To denote *sex*, Männer must be used; as—

der Ehemann, husband, pl. die Ehemänner, married men.

Eheleute means *married people*, married men and women.

§ 10. The following nouns have two plural forms, each having a different meaning:

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>English.</i>
das Band,	die Bänder,	ribbons.
	die Bande,	chains, ties.
die Bank,	die Bänke,	benches.
	die Banken,	banks, commercial banks.
das Ding,	die Dinge,	things generally.
	die Dinger,	creatures, referring to animals and young people.
das Gesicht,	die Gesichter,	faces.
	die Gesichte,	visions.
das Horn,	die Hörner,	horns.
	die Horne,	different kinds of horn.
der Laden,	die Läden,	shops.
	die Laden,	shutters.
das Land,	die Länder,	separate countries.
	die Lande,	various districts of the same country.
das Licht,	die Lichte,	candles.
	die Lichter,	lights.
der Mond,	die Monde,	moons, satellites.
	die Monden,	months (in poetry).
der Ort,	die Orter,	single places.
	die Orte,	places taken collectively.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>English.</i>
die Sau,	die Säue,	sows.
	die Sauen,	wild boars.
der Strauß,	die Strauße,	ostriches.
	die Sträuße,	nosegays, bouquets.
das Stück,	die Stücke,	pieces.
	die Stücken,	fragments.
das Wort,	die Wörter,	single, unconnected words.
	die Worte,	words connected into speech.
der Zoll,	die Zölle,	inches.
	die Zölle,	tolls, taxes.

§ 11. The following nouns are only used in the plural number:

die Alpen, Alps.	die Kosten, expenses.
die Blattern, small-pox.	die Leute, people.
die Brieffschaften, letters, papers.	die Masern, measles.
die Einkünfte, revenue.	die Molken, whey.
die Eltern, parents.	die Ostern, Easter.
die Fasten, Lent.	die Pfingsten, Whitsuntide.
die Ferien, vacation.	die Ränke, tricks.
die Gebrüder, brothers.	die Repressalien, reprisals.
die Gefälle, rates, taxes.	die Spesen, expenses.
die Geschwister, brothers and sisters.	die Sporteln, fees.
die Gliedmaßen, limbs.	die Trümmer, ruins.
	die Weihnachten, Christmas.

§ 12. The following nouns, in the signification attached to them, are not used in the Plural. They are for the most part abstract nouns, and names of plants.

die Ankunft, arrival.	das Einkommen, revenue.
der Anschein, appearance.	das Elend, misery.
das Ansehen, authority.	der Empfang, receipt.
der Argwohn, suspicion.	das Entzücken, rapture.
die Asche, ashes.	das Erbe, inheritance.
der Beginn, beginning.	der Flachs, flax.
das Bestreben, endeavour.	die Flucht, flight.
der Bund, alliance.	der Friede, peace.
der Dank, thanks.	die Furcht, fear.
der Druck, oppression.	der Gefallen, favour.
die Ehre, honour.	die Gerste, barley.

der Glaube, belief.	der Schmuck, ornament.
das Glück, fortune.	der Segen, blessing.
die Gnade, mercy.	der Strand, strand.
der Gram, grief.	der Sturz, fall.
die Güte, kindness.	der Tadel, reproach.
der Hader, dispute.	der Tod, death.
der Hafer, oats.	der Trost, consolation.
der Hanf, hemp.	das Unglück, misfortune.
der Hopfen, hops.	das Unkraut, weeds.
der Jammer, misery.	das Unrecht, wrong.
der Klee, clover.	der Unterricht, instruction.
der Knoblauch, garlic.	der Urlaub, leave of absence.
der Kohl, cabbage.	der Verdacht, suspicion.
der Kummer, affliction.	der Verdruss, vexation.
das Leben, life.	das Vergehen, fault.
die Liebe, love.	das Vergnügen, pleasure.
das Lob, praise.	der Verkehr, traffic.
der Lohn, reward.	das Verlangen, wish.
die Pracht, splendour.	der Verstand, understanding.
der Rath, advice.	die Vorsicht, precaution.
der Raub, spoil.	der Wahn, illusion.
der Rauch, smoke.	der Weizen, wheat.
der Respekt, respect, regard.	der Wille, will.
der Sand, sand.	der Zwang, constraint.
der Schein, appearance.	

(Compounds of these nouns expressive of a concrete idea are sometimes used in the plural form.)

§ 13. The following nine masculine nouns have two forms in the **Nominative Singular**, the first ending in **e**, the second in **en**. The first form in **e** is now generally used, but from the second in **en** all the other cases are formed. The **Genitive Singular** adds an **s** to the ending **en**; all other cases, Singular and Plural, have the ending **en**:

der Friede or der Frieden, peace.	der Name or der Namen, name.
der Funke or der Funken, spark.	der Same or der Samen, seed.
der Gedanke or der Gedanken, thought.	der Schade or der Schaden, damage.
der Glaube or der Glauben, belief.	der Wille or der Willen, will.
der Haufe or der Haufen, heap.	

NOTE.—Friede, Glaube, and Wille are not used in the plural. The plural of Schaden is Schäden and Schäden.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Model.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
der Name(n), the name.		die Namen, the names.
des Namens, of the name.		der Namen, of the names.
dem Namen, to the name.		den Namen, to the names.
den Namen, the name.		die Namen, the names.

II. ESSENTIALS OF CONSTRUCTION.

I. PRINCIPAL AND CO-ORDINATE CLAUSES.

(See § 37.)

§ 14. Infinitives and Participles stand at the end of the clause; as—

Er war ärmlich, aber doch sauber gekleidet.	He was poorly, but yet neatly dressed.
Sein zürnender Oheim hatte ihn zu sich gerufen.	His angry uncle had bid him come to him.
Seine Tante wird morgen zu uns kommen.	His aunt will come to us to- morrow.
Sie hat uns versprochen, mor- gen zu kommen.	She has promised us to come to- morrow.

§ 15. In a clause containing *both* an infinitive and a participle, the infinitive stands last; as—

Der Diener würde es nicht gethan haben, wenn er ihn nicht freundlich darum gebeten hätte.	The servant would not have done it, if he had not kindly asked him to do it.
Der Brief muß gut geschrieben werden, denn er enthält wichtige Mittheilungen.	The letter must be well written, for it contains important com- munications.

§ 16. In a clause containing *two* infinitives, the one governing the other stands last; as—

Er mag mit einem solchen Menschen nichts zu thun haben.	He does not like to have anything to do with such a man.
--	---

§ 17. Separable prefixes of compound verbs (see § 107 of the Grammar) are placed at the end of the clause when the verb is used in a *simple tense*; as—

Der König ging jeden Morgen um elf Uhr aus und kam gegen zwölf Uhr zurück.	The king went out every morning at eleven o'clock and returned towards twelve o'clock.
--	--

§ 18. In a clause containing **two** objects, both expressed by nouns, that of the **person** stands **before** that of the **thing**; as—

Am nächsten Abend gab er dem	The next evening he returned the
Manne das Geld zurück.	money to the man.

§ 19. When *both* objects represent *persons*, the **accusative** generally stands **first**; as—

Man hat den Verbrecher dem	They have delivered the criminal
Richter überliefert.	to the judge.

§ 20. In clauses containing *two* objects, one being a *personal pronoun* and the other a *noun*, the **pronoun** stands **first**; as—

Der fremde Herr gab mir einige	The stranger gave me some apples
Äpfel und Birnen.	and pears.

§ 21. When *both* objects are **personal pronouns**, the **accusative** generally stands **first**; as—

Sie hat es mir gesagt.	She has said it to me.
Man hat sie ihm genommen.	They have taken her away from him.

§ 22. Adverbial expressions of **time** generally stand **before** the object (except it is a pronoun) and **always** **before** adverbial expressions of **manner** and **place**; as—

Wir haben gestern drei Briefe	Yesterday we received three let-
erhalten.	ters.
Er ist heute plötzlich nach Lon-	He has suddenly left for London
don abgereist.	to-day.

But we must say—

Wir haben Sie heute mit Ungebulb	We have been expecting you to-
erwartet. (Sie pers. pron.)	day with impatience.

§ 23. The negation **nicht** stands **after** the **accusative**; as—

Er schreibt den Brief nicht, sondern	He is not writing the letter, but
sein Bruder.	his brother is.
Er hat den Brief nicht geschrieben.	He has not written the letter.

§ 24. In questions **nicht** sometimes stands **before** the **accusative**; as—

Haben Sie nicht meinen Brief er-	Have you not received my let-
halten?	ter?

§ 25. In general the negation **nicht** stands before that part of the sentence which it affects; as—

Ich bin nicht krank gewesen.	I have not been ill.
Wir sprechen nicht von ihm, sondern von seinem Vetter.	We do not speak of him, but of his cousin.
Die Natur hatte sie nicht mit Schönheit ausgestattet.	Nature had not endowed her with beauty.

II. INVERTED CONSTRUCTION.

§ 26. The *ordinary* way of arranging the words is to place the subject and its adjuncts **first**, and the **predicate** with its adjuncts **after**; as—

Der gute Vater (subj.) ist heute Morgen mit seinen drei Töchtern nach London abgereist (predicate with adjuncts).	The good father has left this morning for London with his three daughters.
---	--

But this construction is sometimes inverted, so as to place the predicate, or a part of the predicate, before the subject. This is the case:

(a) In interrogative clauses; as—

Kommt der Mann heute?	Does the man come to-day?
Ist der Vater nach London abgereist?	Has the father left for London?
Hat er kein Geld bei sich?	Has he no money about him?

(b) In imperative clauses; as—

Senden Sie diesen Brief zur Post!	Send this letter to the post-office!
-----------------------------------	--------------------------------------

(c) In exclamatory clauses; as—

Hätte er auf mich gehört!	Would he had listened to me!
---------------------------	------------------------------

(d) In subordinate clauses beginning with an adverbial conjunction. (See § 124 of the Grammar.)

§ 27. The *ordinary* way of arranging the words is often departed from for the sake of **emphasizing a part of the predicate**. In this case the part to be emphasizing is placed at the *beginning* of the sentence, and the **construction must be inverted**, that is to say the **subject must be placed after the verb**; as—

Die letzten Worte hatte der junge Mensch mit gehobener Stimme gesprochen.	The last words the young man had spoken with an elevated tone of voice.
---	---

Heute kann er nicht abreisen,
sondern morgen.

He cannot depart to-day, but to-morrow.

Mit dem zwölf Uhr Zuge kann
er nicht mehr gehen, denn es ist
zu spät.

He cannot go by the twelve o'clock train, for it is too late.

These sentences would read in the *ordinary* construction: Der junge Mensch hatte die letzten Worte mit gehobener Stimme gesprochen. Er kann nicht heute abreisen, sondern morgen. Er kann nicht mehr mit dem zwölf Uhr Zuge gehen, denn es ist zu spät. The words „Die letzten Worte,“ „heute,“ „mit dem zwölf Uhr Zuge,“ have been made *emphatic* by being placed at the *beginning* of the sentence, which required the *verb* and the *subject* to interchange places.

§ 28. Sometimes a *subordinate clause* (that is to say a clause dependent on another clause, without which it would not be understood) is made *emphatic* by being placed before the *principal clause*. Then also the *subject* of the *principal clause* must be placed after the *verb*; as—

Als er in die Stube kam, fand er
mich am Schreibtische.

When he came into the room, he found me at the desk.

In this example the *principal clause* is „er fand mich am Schreibtische,“ and the *subordinate clause* is contained in the words „Als er in die Stube kam;“ this latter clause has been emphasized by being placed before the *principal clause*, but it required the *principal clause* to be *inverted*, so as to place the *subject* (er) after the *verb* (fand).

Here are some more examples of the same class:

Weil er ein guter Junge ist, will ich
ihm seine Bitte gewähren.

Because he is a good fellow, I will grant his request.

Nachdem er gegessen und getrunken
hatte, ging er nach Hause.

After having eaten and drunk, he went home.

III. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

(See § 37.)

§ 29. In subordinate clauses beginning with a relative pronoun, a relative conjunction, or a subordinative conjunction, the *verb* stands at the end; as—

Man zeigte mir ein Buch, das viele
schöne Bilder enthielt.

They showed me a book which contained many beautiful pictures.

Wir waren im Zimmer, als er
eintrat.

We were in the room when he entered.

§ 30. When the **verb** is in a compound tense, the **auxiliary verb** stands **last**; as—

Nachdem sie ihn begrüßt hatte, After she had welcomed him, she
kam sie schnell auf mich zu. approached me quickly.

§ 31. When there are *two* verbs, one of which is a verb of mood (see § 87 of the Grammar), the **verb of mood** stands **last**; as—

Er sagte, daß er nicht kommen He said that he could not come.
könne.

§ 32. When there are *two* verbs, the one being an infinitive, and the other an inflected verb, the **inflected verb** stands **last**; as—

Der Sohn starb gerade zu der Stunde, The son died the very hour his
in welcher sein Vater ihn wie= father hoped to see him again.
derzusehen hoffte.

§ 33. When there are *two infinitives* and an *auxiliary verb*, the **auxiliary verb** has the **first** place, whilst the **governing infinitive** stands **last**; as—

Er überlegte, wie er es werde He considered how he might be
vermeiden können. (könn= able to avoid it.
nen is the governing verb.)

Er sagte, daß er es nicht habe He said that he did not like to
thun mögen. (mögen is the do it.
governing verb.)

§ 34. Sometimes the **conjunction**, which generally connects the subordinate clause with the principal clause, is **omitted and understood**. In this case the construction is like that of a *principal clause*; as—

Er fürchtete, ich könne mich er= He was afraid I might catch
falten. (Er fürchtete, daß ich cold.
mich erfalten könne.)

§ 35. Sometimes the **auxiliary verb** is **omitted and understood**; as—

Daß er mir genommen (wurde), That he was taken from me is my
ist mein größtes Leid. greatest sorrow.

§ 36. In subordinate clauses the **prefixes of separable compound verbs** are not separated from the verb (see § 107 of the Grammar):

Er war so beschäftigt, daß er in vier-
zehn Tagen nicht ausging.

He was so busy that he did not
go out for a fortnight.

§ 37. The co-ordinative conjunctions—*a ber*, *allein*, *denn*, *nämlich*, *oder*, *sondern*, *sowohl*—*als*, and *und*—serve to connect two or more independent statements with each other, which have either one common subject or predicate, or have each a subject and predicate of their own (co-ordinate clauses). **Co-ordinative conjunctions do not affect the regular order of construction explained in §§ 14–25,** and generally stand at the beginning of the co-ordinate clauses which they introduce; but *a ber* and *nämlich* are often placed after the verb, and sometimes even stand in the middle of the clause; as—

Die Frau war dem Manne früh gestorben; dieser ließ dem hinterlassenen Kinde *a ber* jede mögliche Sorgfalt angedeihen.

A subordinate clause, i.e. a clause dependent on another clause, without which it would not be understood, is joined to a principal clause by means of a relative pronoun, or a conjunction, which latter may be either a relative, a subordinative, or an adverbial conjunction. (See § 124 of the Grammar.) The effect produced upon the construction by relative pronouns, relative conjunctions, and subordinative conjunctions has been explained in §§ 29–36. **Adverbial conjunctions, like all other adverbial expressions commencing a clause, require the verb to stand before the subject,** as has been pointed out in § 124 of the Grammar.

III. ESSENTIALS OF WORD-BUILDING.

I. OF NOUNS.

§ 38. Nouns are either *simple* or *compound*.

The simple nouns are either **primitive** or **derivative**.

A. SIMPLE NOUNS.

1. PRIMITIVE NOUNS.

§ 39. **Primitive nouns** are such as are *undervived* and are used as *stems* for the derivation of other words. Such nouns are—

der Stein, stone; das Haus, house; die Frau, woman; der Sohn, son;
der Tisch, table.

Also all nouns with the terminations—

e, el, en, er,

the derivation of which is no longer recognizable; as—

der Knabe, boy; die Taube, dove; der Vogel, bird; der Garten, garden; der Sommer, summer; der Vater, father; der Finger, finger; der Löffel, spoon; der Spiegel, mirror; der Hobel, plane; der Hammer, hammer; die Leier, lyre. (Notice the terminations **el** and **er** in names of *tools* and *instruments*.)

2. DERIVATIVE NOUNS.

§ 40. Derivative nouns are either primary derivatives or secondary derivatives.

Primary derivative nouns are such as are derived from the stems of *primitive verbs*, to which may be added the terminations **t**, **ſt**, **d**, and **e**.

Secondary derivative nouns are such as are derived from other words by means of *significant prefixes* and *suffixes*.

(a) Primary Derivative Nouns.

§ 41. Primary derivative nouns are formed from the stems of *primitive verbs* in three ways:

1. The stem is altogether unchanged; as—

fall=en, to fall;	der Fall, the fall.
ſchall=en, to sound;	der Schall, the sound.
ſpiel=en, to play;	das Spiel, the play.

2. The vowel of the stem is changed; as—

fliegen, to fly;	der Flug, flight.
trinken, to drink;	der Trunk, drink.
fließen, to flow;	der Fluß, river.

3. The terminations—

t, ſt, d, and e

are added to a verbal stem. This verbal stem is sometimes unaltered, sometimes its vowel is changed, and sometimes also one or more of its consonants.

The above terminations form essential parts of the nouns thus formed. The stems in themselves have *no independent signification as nouns*, and the terminations have lost their original meaning in the course of time.

Nouns of this class are—

die <i>Schrift</i> , writing,	from <i>ſchreib</i> =en, to write.
die <i>Gruft</i> , grave,	from <i>grab</i> =en, to dig.
die <i>Wacht</i> , watch,	from <i>wach</i> =en, to watch.
die <i>Wucht</i> , weight,	from <i>wieg</i> =en, v. intr. to weigh.
die <i>Sucht</i> , passion, desire,	from <i>ſuch</i> =en, to seek for, to be in search of.
die <i>Kunst</i> , art,	from <i>fönn</i> =en, to be able to do, to know, to have skill in.
die <i>Schwulſt</i> , swelling,	from <i>ſchwell</i> =en, to swell.
die <i>Jagd</i> , chase,	from <i>jag</i> =en, to chase.
der <i>Brand</i> , burning,	from <i>brenn</i> =en, to burn.
die <i>Gabe</i> , gift,	from <i>geb</i> =en, to give.
die <i>Binde</i> , bandage,	from <i>bind</i> =en, to bind.

(b) *Secondary Derivative Nouns.*

§ 42. Secondary derivative nouns are derived from verbs, nouns, and adjectives by means of **significant prefixes** and **suffixes**.

In nouns of this class the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, and the diphthong *au*, are frequently changed into *ä*, *ö*, *ü*, and *äu*.

P R E F I X E S.

§ 43. The *prefixes* which are used for the formation of derivative nouns are—

Erz, **Ge**, **Miß**, **un**, and **ur**.

It must be here noticed that the *unaccented verbal prefixes*—

be, *ent*, *emp*, *er*, *hinter*, *ver*, *voll*, *wider*, *zer*

(see § 105 of the Grammar),

and the *accented verbal prefixes*—

ab, *an*, *auf*, *aus*, *bei*, *dar*, *ein*, *fort*, *her*, *heim*, *hin*, *los*,
mit, *nach*, *nieder*, *vor*, *weg*, *wieder*, *zu*, *durch*, *um*,
über, and *unter*, etc. (see § 109 of the Grammar),

serve in the first instance to form compound verbs, and that nouns with these prefixes are again derived from those verbs.

[The prefixes *Hinter*, *Voll*, and *Wider*, however, are frequently found in connection with *primitive* and *primary derivative nouns*, forming with them compound nouns, like—

das *Hin'terhaar*, back-hair; das *Hin'terhaus*, back-house; der *Hin'ter-*
sepf, back of the head; der *Vollmond*, full moon; die *Vollmacht*

(from *Macht*, power, and *voll*, full), authority, power of attorney; *das Vollblut* (from *voll*, full, and *Blut*, blood), thoroughbred horse; *der Wiederhall*, re-echo, echo; *der Widersacher*, antagonist; *der Widerstand*, resistance.

When compounded with *nouns* these *originally* unaccented verbal prefixes become *accented*.]

§ 44.

1. **Er**; corresponds to the English *arch*, and denotes the *first*, the *best*, the *most perfect* of its kind; as—*der Erzherzog*, archduke; *der Erzengel*, archangel; *der Erzfeind*, arch-foe; *der Erzbischof*, archbishop.
2. **Ge** expresses in general **association** and **assimilation**. It forms—
 - (a) From verbal stems or from nouns, **names of persons**; as—*der Gespieler*, playmate; *der Gehülfe*, assistant; *die Geschwister*, brothers and sisters.
 - (b) From nouns, **collectives**; as—*das Gewässer*, waters; *das Gebüsch*, thicket; *das Gewölk*, clouds.
 - (c) From verbs, **names of actions** in which the action is represented as being *repeated* and *continued*; as—*das Geschrei*, repeated crying; *das Gebell*, continued barking; *das Gerede*, continued talking. Also nouns which are the **names of the action expressed by the verb**; as—*der Gesang*, singing, song; *das Gebet*, prayer. Or which *result* from the *action* expressed by the verb; as—*das Gebäude*, building (from *bauen*, to build); *das Gedicht*, poem (from *dichten*, to write poetry). And—
 - (d) It forms from verbs names for the **instrument** of the action expressed by the verb; as—*das Geschöß*, gun (from *schießen*, to shoot); *der Geruch*, the sense of smell (from *riechen*, to smell).
3. **Miß** corresponds to the English *mis* and *dis*. It denotes **wrong** and **ill**, and often may be translated by *bad*; as—*die Mißernte*, bad harvest; *die Mißgunst*, ill will, envy; *der Mißmuth*, ill humour; *der Mißklang*, dissonance; *der Mißleiter*, misleader.
4. **Un** has a **negative power**, and corresponds to the English *un*, *in*, *mis*; as—*der Undank*, ingratitude; *das Unkraut*, weed (from

Kraut, herb); das Un'glück, misfortune; der Un'mensch, in-human man, monster.

5. **Ur** denotes **origin** and **primitiveness**; as—der Ur'sprung, origin (from springen, to spring); der Ur'heber, the originator; die Ur'sache, the first cause, cause; die Ur'kunde, document, deed (from Kunde, news, information).

SUFFIXES.

§ 45. *A Table of the Principal Suffixes.*

chen, lein —form diminutives.	er, el —form from verbs names of tools and instruments.
e, ei, heit, keit, schaft, ung —form feminine abstract nouns.	ling —forms names of male persons and things.
ig, ial, sel, thum —form abstract and concrete substantives of all genders.	in —forms names of female persons.
er —forms names of male persons.	ich, icht —form neuter collectives.
	rich —forms appellations of male persons and animals.

DIMINUTIVE NOUNS.

§ 46. **chen** and **lein**

form **diminutives** from concrete nouns; as—

der Sohn, son; das Söhn **chen**, little son, dear son, darling son (see § 10^a of the Grammar).

die Blume, flower; das Blüm **chen**, floweret.

die Magd, the maid; das Mägd **lein**, the pretty girl.

ABSTRACT NOUNS.

§ 47. **e**

forms, from *adjectives*, **names of qualities**; as—

die Güte, goodness (from gut); die Kälte, cold (from kalt); die Wärme, warmth (from warm); die Höhe, height (from hoch).

Some assume a concrete meaning in certain compound nouns; as—

die Druckerschwärze, printer's ink (from Drucker, printer, and schwarz, black).

§ 48. **ei, rei** (English *y, ry*)

form, from verbs, **names of repeated or continued actions**, frequently implying *contempt*; as—

die Bettel*e*i, beggary; die Heuchel*e*i, hypocrisy; die Reimer*e*i, rhyming, the making of bad verses; die Spielere*i*, childish play, from spielen, to play.

Ei forms also, from *names of persons*, nouns denoting the **business** of the person, or the **place of residence** or **occupation** of the same; as—

die Jäger*e*i, huntsmanship, from der Jäger, huntsman; die Maler*e*i, the art of painting, from der Maler, painter; die Färbere*i* (from der Färber, dyer), dyer's trade, the art of dyeing, dyery, dye-house.

§ 49. **heit** and **feit** (English *head, hood*)

form (1) from *names of persons*, nouns denoting a **state** or **condition**; as—die Kind*heit*, childhood; die Mann*heit*, manhood.

Or nouns denoting a **community** of persons designated by the noun; as—die Christen*heit* (from Christ), Christendom, the community of Christians; die Geistlich*keit*, the clergy, clergymen as a body, a community (from der Geistliche, the clergyman); die Mensch*heit*, mankind, the human race (from der Mensch, man, human being).

(2) they form, from *adjectives*, names of **qualities** (like *e*, § 47); as—die Klug*heit*, prudence (from klug); die Dunkel*heit*, darkness (from dunkel); die Eitel*keit*, vanity (from eitel).

Sometimes these nouns assume a *concrete meaning*; as—die Kostbar*keit*, jewel, trinket (from kostbar, precious); die Flüssig*keit*, fluid (from flüssig, fluid, liquid).

§ 50. **schaft** (English *ship*)

is mostly joined to *nouns*, and less frequently to adjectives and verbs. It corresponds often to the English *ship*, and denotes—

(1) A **prominent quality**; as—die Freund*schaft*, friendship (from der Freund, friend); die Meister*schaft*, mastership (from der Meister, master).

(2) A **community** of persons of the same class or calling; as—die Bürger*schaft*, corporation, a community of citizens (der Bürger, citizen); die Priester*schaft*, priesthood; die Kaufmann*schaft*, the whole body of merchants of a place (Kaufmann, merchant; kaufen, to buy).

(3) It forms **collectives**; as—die Erb*schaft*, inheritance (erben, to inherit), that is all things inherited taken collectively; die Brief*schaft*en, letters, deeds, documents (that is all letters taken collectively).

§ 51.

ung (English *ing, ion*)

forms (1) from verbs, names of **actions** representing the action in its *progress*; as—die Fütterung, feeding (füttern, to feed); die Belehrung, instruction (belehren, to instruct); and forms—

- (2) names of **actions** designating the *result* of the action, or the *state resulting* from the action; as—die Mischung, mixture (mischen, to mix. Mischung is a name for the result of the action of mixing); die Erfindung, invention (erfinden, to invent. Erfindung is a name for the result of the action of inventing); die Ordnung, order (ordnen, to arrange. Ordnung, the state resulting from the act of arranging).

§ 52.

niß (English *ness*)

forms, from verbs, adjectives, and primitive nouns, **feminine and neuter abstract names** for *conditions* or *circumstances*; as—

die Finsterniß, darkness; das Verhältniß, situation, circumstance.

It is also found in some *concretes*; as—

das Gefängniß, prison; das Bildniß, likeness.

§ 53.

sal

forms, from verbs, *neuter nouns*, mostly designating a **state**; as—

das Schicksal, fate; die Trübsal, affliction.

It is also found in some *concretes*, as das Scheusal, monster.

§ 54.

sel,

closely related to sal, forms *nouns* denoting the **product** or **object** of **an action**; as—

das Räthselsel, riddle, enigma, the object of the act of guessing (rathen, to guess); das Häckselsel, chopped straw, the product of the act of chopping (hacken, to chop).

§ 55.

thum (English *dom*)

forms, from verbs or adjectives, *abstract nouns* denoting a **quality** or **condition**; as—

der Reichthum, wealth; der Irrthum, mistake, error (irren, to err).

Joined to names of persons it forms nouns denoting a **community** of persons designated by the noun; as—

das Heidenthum, heathendom; das Priesterthum, priesthood.

CONCRETE NOUNS.

§ 56.

er

forms, (a) from *female* appellations, names of **male persons** and **animals**; as—der Witter, widower, from die Wittve, widow; der Tauber, male dove, from die Taube, dove.

(b) from *verbs*, names of **persons**, designating the person with respect to the *profession* or *occupation* exercised by the same; as—der Schäfer, shepherd, from das Schaf, sheep; der Lehrer, teacher, from lehren, to teach; der Reiter, horseman, from reiten, to ride; der Sänger, singer, from singen, to sing.

(c) from names of *countries* and *places*, names of **male persons**; as—der Engländerer, Englishman, from England; der Italienerer, Italian, from Italien; der Hamburgerer, the inhabitant of Hamburg; der Berlinerer, the inhabitant of Berlin.

(The name of the people is often a primitive noun, from which the name of the country is derived; as—

der Russe, the Russian, but Rußland, Russia; der Preuße, the Prussian, but Preußen, Prussia.)

§ 57.

er, el

are used to form names of **tools** and **instruments**; as—

der Zugel, bridle, from ziehen, to pull, to tug; der Kreisel, top, from der Kreis, circle; der Leuchter, candlestick, from leuchten, to light; der Bohrer, gimlet, from bohren, to bore.

(Many nouns of this class are primitive nouns, see § 39.)

§ 58.

ling (ing) [English *ing*]

conveys the idea of **dependence**; as—

der Günstling (from Günst, favour); der Säugling, suckling, baby; der Liebling, darling; der Jüngling, youth, young man.

It also conveys the idea of **contempt** and of **disregard**; as—

der Weichling, weakling, effeminate man (weich, weak); der Dichterling, poetaster (Dichter, poet).

§ 59.

in

forms, from names of *male* persons and animals, *corresponding female* appellations; as—

der Freund, friend;	die Freundin, lady friend.
der Gärtner, gardener;	die Gärtnerin, gardener's wife.
der Löwe, lion;	die Löwin, lioness.
der Engländer, Englishman;	die Engländerin, English lady.

(Nouns ending in *e*, like *der Löwe*, drop that *e*, and then add *in* to form the female appellation.)

§ 60.

ich, ich t

form *neuter collective nouns*; as—

das *Reisich* (more correct than *Reisig*), brush-wood, from *das Reis*, twig; das *Dickicht*, thicket (*dick*, thick).

§ 61.

rich (contraction of *er* and *ich*)

serves to form appellations of **male persons and animals**; as—

der *Wütherich*, tyrant (*die Wuth*, rage, anger); der *Enterich*, drake (*die Ente*, duck).

§ 62.

and, ath, uth, de, end

appear only in a few derivations, and are of rather *obscure significance*; as—

der *Heiland*, Saviour; die *Heimath*, home; die *Armuth*, poverty; die *Freude*, joy; die *Jugend*, youth, young people.

B. COMPOUND NOUNS.

§ 63. Compound nouns take the gender and declension of the **second component**, which is always a *noun*.

The *first* component may be a noun, an adjective, a numeral, a verb, the pronoun *Selbst*, self, or a particle; as—

der *Gauvater*, house-father; der *Edelmuth*, generosity; die *Viertelstunde*, quarter of an hour; der *Esstisch*, dining-table; die *Selbstliebe*, self-love; das *Hinterhaus*, back-house.

The two components are sometimes connected by one of the terminations *e*, *l*, *n*, *s*, of which *n* and *s* are originally the sign of the genitive; as—

das *Tag=erwerb*, day's work; die *Heide=I-beere*, bilberry; der *Sonne=nschein*, sunshine; der *Geburt=s=tag*, birthday.

The *first* component generally takes the *principal accent*; as—

der *Schreib=tisch*, writing-desk; die *Selbst=liebe*, self-love; das *Garten=haus*, garden-house.

II. OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 64. Adjectives are either **primitive**, **derivative**, or **compound**. **Primitive adjectives** are such as—gut, good; grün, green; klein, small; also many with the terminations *e, el, en, er*, the derivation of which is no longer recognizable, as—leis*e*, gentle; ed*el*, noble; eben, even, plain; heit*er*, serene.

Derivative adjectives are formed from *nouns, adjectives, and verbs* by means of *significant* prefixes and suffixes.

A. DERIVATIVE ADJECTIVES.

PREFIXES.

§ 65. Prefixes for the formation of *derivative adjectives* are—

be, er, ge, miß, un, ur.

The explanations given in § 43 with respect to the prefixes *Er, Miß, Un, Ur*, as used for the formation of derivative nouns, apply equally to the same prefixes for the formation of derivative adjectives.

The original meaning of the prefixes **be** and **ge** is no longer recognizable in many adjectives, as—bereit, ready; bequem, comfortable; gerade, straight; gesund, healthy.

Ge, however, when prefixed to *verbal stems* for the formation of adjectives, attributes to the noun it qualifies a **capacity** for, or a **tendency** and **disposition** towards the notion implied by the *verb*. The adjectives have frequently the termination *ig*, as—gelehr*ig*, docile (lehren, to teach); gefräß*ig*, voracious (fressen, to eat, to devour); gefüg*ig*, pliable (fügen, to yield).

Be and **Ge** prefixed to *nouns*, and with the help of the termination *t*, form adjectives denoting a **being endowed** with the *object* expressed by the *noun*; as—gestieft, booted, in boots (der Stiefel, boot); der gestieselte Kater, puss in boots; gestielt, stalked, having a stalk (der Stiel, stalk); beschuht, shoed, provided with shoes (der Schuh, the shoe); besohlt, soled (die Sohle, the sole of a shoe or boot).

SUFFIXES.

§ 66. Suffixes for the formation of adjectives are—

bar, en, ern, haft, icht, ig, isch, lich, sam.

- (1) **bar**, added to *nouns* derived from verbs, corresponds mostly to the English *ful*, and expresses **disposition**; as—danke*bar*, thankful; wunder*bar*, wonderful; fürchte*bar*, fearful.

Added to *verbal stems*, it corresponds mostly to the English *able*, and denotes **possibility** and **capability**; as — trinf b a r, drinkable; eß b a r, eatable; denf b a r, imaginable, from denken, to think.

- (2) **en** and **ern** form, from names of *materials*, adjectives denoting the **material** of which anything is *made*; as — das G^ol**d**, gold — gold**e**n, of gold; die W^oll**e**, wool — woll**e**n, of wool, woollen; die S^eid**e**, silk — seid**e**n; das H^ol**z**, wood — hölz**e**r n.

Words ending in *er* require only *n* to be added; as — sil**ber** n, of silver, from das S**il**ber; led**er** n, of leather, from das L**e**der.

(The suffix *en* also forms the Past Participle of verbs; as — lieb**e**n, p.p. geliebt; sp**re**ch**e**n, p.p. g**e**spr**o**ch**e**n.)

- (3) **haft** (kindred to „h**a**ften," to stick, to cleave, and to „h**a**ben," to have) corresponds to the English *ous*. It conveys in general the notion of **being endowed** with the quality or object expressed by the word to which it is added; as — leb**h**aft, vivacious (das L**e**ben, life); tug**e**nd**h**aft, virtuous (die Tug**e**nd, virtue); ein tug**e**nd**h**aft**e**r M**e**n**s**ch, a virtuous man (i.e. a man *endowed* with the quality of virtue); mann**h**aft, manly; bö**s**h**a**ft, malicious (full of malice).

- (4) **icht** (English *like, ous*) forms, more especially from names of materials, adjectives denoting a **resemblance** with the *object* expressed by the *stem*; as — hölz**i**ch**t**, wood-like; ölb**i**ch**t**, oleaginous (das Ö**e**l, oil); woll**i**ch**t**, resembling wool; stein**i**ch**t**, resembling stone, stone-like, hard.

- (5) **ig** (English *y*) forms adjectives conveying the notion of **being endowed** with the *quality* or *object* expressed by the *stem*; as — m**a**ch**t**ig, mighty, powerful (die M**a**ch**t**, might); g**ü**t**i**g, kind (die G**ü**t**e**, kindness); w**a**ld**i**g, wooded (der W**a**ld, forest); die w**a**ld**i**g**e** G**e**g**e**nd, the wooded neighbourhood; s**a**nd**i**g, sandy (der S**a**nd, sand).

It forms *attributive adjectives* from adverbs, prepositions, and numerals; as — h**i**er**i**g, of this place (from h**i**er, here); ü**br**i**g**, left, remaining (from ü**ber**, over); ein**z**i**g**, only, sole (from ein, one).

- (6) **isch** (English *ish, an, ian*) forms **national adjectives** from names of countries; as — engl**i**sch, English; rö**m**i**sch**, Roman; span**i**sch, Spanish; itali**e**n**i**sch, Italian.

It also forms adjectives from nouns of *foreign origin*, when it answers to the English *ic, ical*; as—*hiſtoriſch*, historic; *fritiſch*, critical; *logiſch*, logical.

- (7) **lich** (*ly, ish, al*) means **like**, and conveys in general the idea of **resemblance** between the object qualified and the object expressed by the stem, as—*Eine männliche That*, a manly deed. From nouns it forms adjectives of an adverbial character; as—*fünſtlich*, artificial; *herzlich*, hearty; *wörtlich*, verbal;—and when added to adjectives it has a diminutive force, as—*röthlich*, reddish; *ſchwächlich*, weakly.

- (8) **ſam** corresponds often to the English *ful*, and denotes mostly a **disposition**; as—*ſolgſam*, obedient (*ſolgen*, to follow), i. e. a disposition to follow; *ſurchtſam*, fearful, timid (*die Furcht*, fear); *wachſam*, watchful (*wachen*, to wake).

B. COMPOUND ADJECTIVES.

§ 67. Compound adjectives are formed in the same manner as compound nouns. Compound adjectives, the first component of which is a *noun*, require generally the letters **s** or **n** to be inserted between the two components (see § 63): *hoffnung-s-voll*; *ehre-n-worth*.

(For the composition of Verbs, and the signification of prefixes used with Verbs, the student is referred to §§ 104–112 of the Grammar).

IV. THE USE AND SIGNIFICATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD.

§ 68.

The Verb **Wollen**.

(See § 88 of the Grammar.)

It must be borne in mind that the English *future* of *shall* and *will* with the infinitive of another verb *can never be translated by the verb wollen*, but must always be expressed by the auxiliary verb of tense *werden* (see § 75, *H*, of the Grammar). *Der König wird morgen kommen*, the king will come to-morrow.

Wollen signifies—

1. **Will, intention, pleasure, and inclination**; as—

Ich will es thun.

I will do it.

Wir wollen heute Nachmittag ausgehen.

We intend going out this afternoon.

Er will, daß es mir in der Welt gut gehen soll.	<i>It is his pleasure to see me getting on in the world.</i>
So Gott will.	<i>If it please God.</i>
Der Minister will mir wohl.	<i>The minister is favourably dis- posed towards me.</i>

2. It indicates that an action is *about* to take place, when it corresponds to the English 'to be about,' 'to be on the point,' or 'to be going to;' as—

Ein armer Bauer wollte sterben.	<i>A poor peasant was about to die.</i>
Ich wollte gerade abreisen, als der Brief ankam.	<i>I was on the point of leaving when the letter arrived.</i>
Diese Mauer will einfallen.	<i>This wall is going to tumble.</i>
Ich wollte nur sagen, daß ich nicht an seinem Fleiße zweifle.	<i>I was only going to say (or I merely wished to say) that I have no doubt about his industry.</i>

3. It denotes an **assertion by the subject** (see § 69, 2), when it corresponds to the English *to maintain* and *to assert*; as—

Der Diener will es selbst gesehen haben.	<i>The servant maintains that he has seen it with his own eyes.</i>
Der Gefangene will um jene Zeit nicht zu Hause gewesen sein.	<i>The prisoner asserts that he was not at home at that time.</i>

4. It expresses **wish and want**; as—

Er will nicht gern gesehen sein.	<i>He does not wish to be seen.</i>
Zu wem wollen Sie?	<i>Who is it you want?</i>
Was wollen Sie?	<i>What do you want? or what do you wish to have?</i>

5. **Possibility**, when it answers to the English *may*; as—

Die Umstände mögen sein, welche sie wollen.	<i>Let the circumstances be what they may.</i>
Dem sei, wie ihm wolle.	<i>Be that as it may.</i>

6. **Ability**, when it may be rendered by *to be able*, or *can*; as—

Was will ich machen?	<i>What can I do?</i>
Wo wollen Sie die Mittel fin- den, das auszuführen?	<i>Where can you find the means for doing that?</i>

7. A strong command; as—

Wollt ihr stille sitzen!

Will you sit still!

Willst du gehorchen!

Obey!

§ 69.

The Verb Sollen.

(See § 89 of the Grammar.)

Sollen signifies—

1. A moral necessity, proceeding from an established law, or from the will of another person; as—

Er sollte es thun, denn es ist
seine Pflicht.He *ought* to do it, for it is his
duty.Du sollst Gott, deinen Herrn, lie-
ben von ganzem Herzen.Thou *shalt* love the Lord, thy God,
with thy whole heart.Mein Vater sagt, ich soll Deutsch
lernen.My father says I *am to* learn Ger-
man.

Er hätte sich muthig zeigen sollen.

He *ought* to have shown himself
brave.2. Assertion by others (see § 68, 3), when it answers to the English *they say, it is reported, it is said*; as—

Sie soll todt sein.

She *is said* to be dead.Der Feind soll schon nahe vor
der Hauptstadt sein.The enemy *is reported* to be near
the capital already.3. Futurity, when it must be rendered by the verb *to be*; as—Das neue Schauspiel soll morgen
gegeben werden.The new play *is to be* given to-
morrow.

Die Arbeit soll morgen fertig sein.

The work *is to be* ready to-morrow.

4. Concession and acquiescence; as—

Sie sollen das Paar Stiefel mor-
gen haben.You *shall* have the pair of boots
to-morrow.Ja, ich will Ihre Bitte erfüllen; Sie
sollen das Geheimniß erfahren.Yes, I will grant your request;
you *shall* learn the secret.5. The Imperfect expresses a condition, in the meaning of *should* and *were*; as—Wenn sie kommen sollten, so sagen
Sie ihnen nur, daß ich krank bin.If they *should* come, please tell
them that I am ill.Wenn es zu spät sein sollte, so
wären wir verloren.If it *were* too late, we should be
lost.

6. The Imperfect is likewise used in questions, to imply doubt and surprise; as—

Sollte er wirklich hier sein?

Should he (can he) really be here?

Sollte es möglich sein?

Can it be possible?

7. In connection with the verb *sein*, the Present is often used in the meaning of '*intended to be*;' as—

Soll dies Ihr Bildniß sein?

Is this *intended to be* your likeness?

8. It is used *elliptically* (the infinitive of another verb being understood) in the significations distinguished by italics; as—

Was soll das?

What is the meaning of that?

Was sollen diese unnützen
Worte?

*What is the meaning of these use-
less words?*

Was soll er?

What is he wanted for?

Was sollen wir?

What are we wanted for?

Was soll ich so früh auf?

What am I to do up so early?

Wozu sollen diese eiteln Klagen?

*What is the use of these vain com-
plaints?*

Wozu soll das?

What is the use of that?

Wozu sollen diese Blumen?

What are these flowers for?

§ 70.

The Verb *Müssen*.

(See § 90 of the Grammar.)

Müssen signifies—

1. **Necessity**, both natural and moral, when it may be rendered by *to be* and *to have*; as—

Alle Menschen müssen sterben.

All men *must* die.

Der gute Bürger muß den Gesetzen
seines Landes gehorchen.

The good citizen *must* obey the
laws of his country.

Ich muß um zehn Uhr in der
Stadt sein.

I *am* to be in town by ten
o'clock.

Er muß es thun.

He *is obliged* to do it, or he *has*
to do it.

2. **Supposition**; as—

Sein Vater muß jetzt besser sein,
denn ich habe ihn gestern am
Fenster gesehen.

I *suppose* his father is better now,
for I saw him at the window
yesterday.

Es muß ein Unglück geschehen sein,
denn Sie sehen so verstimmt aus.

I *am afraid* a misfortune has hap-
pened, for you look so agitated.

§ 71.

The Verb *Können*.

(See § 91 of the Grammar.)

Können signifies—

1. Physical, moral, and intellectual ability to perform a certain action; as—

Die Fische können schwimmen.

Fishes *can* swim.

Er konnte es nicht thun, denn es war unmöglich.

He *could* not do it, for it was impossible.

Er konnte weder lesen noch schreiben.

He *could* neither read nor write.

Ich begreife nicht, wie er das hat sagen können (see § 87 of the Grammar).

I don't understand how he *can* have said that.

Ich kann Ihnen nicht helfen, mein Herr, es thut mir leid.

I cannot help you, Sir, I am sorry.

2. Liberty or permission, as proceeding from an existing law or necessity, from the speaker, or from the will of another person (compare dürfen and mögen); as—

Mein Bruder kann mit seinem Vermögen thun, was er will, denn er ist volljährig. (Law.)

My brother *may* do with his fortune what he likes, for he is of age.

Sie können sich darauf verlassen. (Speaker.)

You *may* depend upon it, or you may rest assured.

Er sagt, Sie können kommen, wenn Sie wollen. (Other person.)

He says you *may* come if you like.3. Possibility (*may* and *might*); as—

Es kann sein, daß er kommt.

It *may* be (it is possible) that he will come.

Es kann nicht sein.

It *cannot* be, or it is impossible.

Mein Vater sagte, ich könne mich irren.

My father said I *might* be mistaken.

4. Supposition on the part of the speaker, more especially in the Imperfect of the Subjunctive Mood (see also mögen and dürfen); as—

Alles könnte zuletzt nur falsches Spiel sein. (Schiller.)

All *may*, after all, be only false play.

5. It is used elliptically, the infinitive of another verb being understood; as—

Ich habe meine Aufgabe nicht gekonnt I have not *been able to say* my lesson.
(see § 87 of the Grammar).

Ich kann nicht immer, wie ich will. I *cannot* always *act* as I like.

Können Sie Deutsch? *Can you speak* German?

Ich kann nicht weiter. I *cannot go on*, or I am at a stand still.

§ 72.

The Verb Mögen.

(See § 92 of the Grammar.)

Mögen signifies —

1. **Permission**, as proceeding from the will of the speaker (compare können and dürfen); as—

Er mag mit dem Gelde thun, was He *may* do with the money what
er will, ich will es ihm zum Ge- he pleases, I will make him a
schenk machen. present of it.

Sie mögen mich morgen ins The- You *may* accompany me to-morrow
ater begleiten. to the theatre.

Sie mögen gehen! You *may go*!

Er mag sich in Acht nehmen! *Let* him take heed!

2. **Supposition** on the part of the speaker, more especially in the Imperfect of the Subjunctive Mood (see können and dürfen); as—

Er mag krank sein. He *may* be ill.

Das möchte schwer zu beweisen To prove that *might* (*would, I pre-*
sein. *sume,*) be difficult.

Es möchte wohl besser sein, wenn I *fancy it would* be better to leave
wir die Sache unterließen. the matter alone.

Er mag bald kommen, denn er He *may* soon come, for he
kommt gewöhnlich um diese Zeit generally comes home at this
nach Hause. time.

3. It indicates a **wish**, more especially in the Present and Imperfect of the Subjunctive Mood. The Imperfect Subjunctive denotes also an inclination or disposition on the part of the speaker.

Examples.

(a) WISH.

Mögen Sie glücklich sein! *May* you be happy!

Möchte er bald kommen! *Would he might* soon come!

Sagen Sie ihm, er möge mich Tell him *that I wish* him to come
morgen besuchen. and see me to-morrow.

(b) INCLINATION.

Ich möchte das Haus wohl kaufen, aber es ist zu theuer.	<i>I am inclined to buy the house, but it is too dear.</i>
Ich möchte es wohl glauben, aber die Beweise sind dagegen.	<i>I am disposed (I should like) to believe it, but the evidence is against it.</i>

4. It signifies **liking**, when it corresponds to the English *to like*, *to be fond of*. In this meaning we find it often accompanied with the adverb **gerne**, or **gern** (willingly), which is used to intensify its signification. Sometimes we even find it used elliptically in the meaning of *to like*, another verb being understood.

Examples.

Mögen Sie gerne spazieren gehen?	<i>Are you fond of walking?</i>
Ich mag die deutsche Stunde sehr gern.	<i>I am very fond of the German lesson.</i>
Er mag es nicht thun, weil es ihm Mühe macht.	<i>He does not like to do it, because it gives him trouble.</i>
Ich mag dieses Kind nicht.	<i>I don't like this child.</i>
Mögen Sie dies Bier?	<i>Do you like this beer?</i>
Nein, ich mag es nicht, es ist zu bitter.	<i>No, I don't, it is too bitter.</i>

We find also **gern** without **mögen** in sentences like these:

Ich tanze gern.	<i>I like to dance.</i>
Gehen Sie gern ins Theater?	<i>Do you like to go to the theatre?</i>

§ 73.

The Verb **Dürfen**.

(See § 93 of the Grammar.)

Dürfen signifies—

1. **Liberty or permission**, as proceeding from an existing law or necessity, or from the will of another person (compare **mögen** and **können**). With a negation it corresponds to the English *dare not*, *must not*, *ought not*, and *not to be allowed*.

Examples.

Jeder Mensch darf seine Grundsätze frei aussprechen.	<i>Every man is at liberty to express his principles openly.</i>
Darf mein Freund auch kommen?	<i>May my friend come as well?</i>

Er darf ohne die Erlaubniß seines Vaters nicht kommen.	He is <i>not allowed</i> to come without his father's permission.
Er darf sich darüber nicht wundern.	He <i>must not</i> be surprised at it.
Sie dürfen es nicht wagen.	You <i>dare not</i> venture it.

2. **Supposition** on the part of the speaker, but only in the *Imperfect* of the *Subjunctive Mood*. The Imperfect Subjunctive of the verbs können, mögen, and dürfen we find especially employed in German for the purpose of expressing an opinion in a cautious and unpretending way (compare können and mögen).

Examples.

Es dürfte nicht schwer sein, Beweise für seine Schuld zu finden.	It <i>would not</i> be difficult to find evidence for his guilt.
Eine so günstige Gelegenheit dürfte sich nicht wieder bieten.	So favourable an opportunity <i>will probably</i> not offer again.
Das dürfte leicht geschehen.	That <i>might</i> easily happen.

§ 74.

The Verb Lassen.

(See § 94 of the Grammar.)

Lassen signifies—

1. **Concession and permission**, when it may be rendered by *to let, to suffer, to permit, and to allow*; as—

Lassen Sie mich gehen!	Let me go!
Er läßt sein Haus in Verfall gerathen.	He <i>lets</i> his house go to ruin.
Er wollte sich nicht erbitten lassen.	He would not <i>suffer</i> himself to be prevailed upon.
Wir lassen uns nicht abschrecken.	We don't <i>suffer</i> ourselves to be intimidated.
Fallen lassen.	To allow to fall, to drop.
Er hat den Teller fallen lassen.	He has <i>dropped</i> the plate.
Warum lassen Sie das Mädchen nicht ins Concert gehen?	Why do you not allow the girl to go to the concert?

2. It is used in the meaning of **to cause, to get, and to make**; as—

Er ließ mir das Geld auszahlen.	He <i>caused</i> the money to be paid to me.
---------------------------------	--

Der Richter ließ die Zeugen abhören.

The judge *caused* the witnesses to be examined.

Ich will ein Buch drucken lassen.

I am about *to have* a book printed.

Er ließ mir einen Brief schreiben.

He *had*(*or got*) a letter written to me.

Wir wollen Alles rechtzeitig bereit machen lassen.

We will *have* all ready in due time.

Er ließ den Tempel dem Boden gleich machen.

He *had* the temple levelled to the ground.

Wir wollen ihn die Folgen fühlen lassen.

We will *make* him feel the consequences.

Lassen Sie ihn sogleich hinausgehen!

Make him go out directly!

3. It signifies command, when it is to be rendered by 'to command' and 'to order;' as—

Der Admiral ließ die Schiffe in Schlachtordnung stellen.

The admiral *commanded* the ships to be drawn up in order of battle.

Der Kaiser ließ die Anführer erschießen.

The emperor *ordered* the ring-leaders to be shot.

4. It may be used reflectively and impersonally, when it implies capability and possibility; as—

Das läßt sich thun.

That *may* be done.

Das läßt sich nicht thun.

That *cannot* be done.

Das läßt sich begreifen.

That *is* quite conceivable, *or* that is a matter of course.

Es läßt sich hier angenehm leben.

Living here is very agreeable.

Es läßt sich Niemand sehen oder hören.

There is nobody to be seen or heard.

V. ON PUNCTUATION.

German Punctuation practically differs from English only with respect to the use of the *comma*.

§ 75. In German a comma is required to separate the principal from the subordinate clause, more especially *before* relative pronouns and most conjunctions. Before conjunctions, however, we sometimes place the *semicolon* to mark a longer pause than the comma would indicate.

Examples.

Er hat mir vorher gesagt, daß er heute nicht kommen werde.	He told me previously that he would not come to-day.
Können Sie mir sagen, welchen der beiden Knaben Sie heute Morgen gesehen haben?	Can you tell me which of the two boys you have seen this morning?
Ja, den jüngeren. Er war im Felde; ich kann jedoch nicht sagen, wo er jetzt ist.	Yes, the younger. He was in the field; but I cannot say where he is now.
Ich weiß, daß sie meinem Rathe nicht folgen wird, denn sie handelt stets nach ihrem eigenen Ermessen.	I know she will not follow my advice, for she always acts according to her own judgment.

§ 76. When the conjunction **oder** joins words of a similar kind, or when it connects different expressions for one and the same thing, *no* comma is required. But when **oder** is used to connect parts which are contrasted with each other, and represent *dissimilar* things, or ideas *dissimilar* to each other, we should place a comma before it.

Examples.

Man muß nicht Alles glauben, was dieser oder jener Mensch sagt.	One must not believe everything that this or that man says.
Der Frühling des Lebens oder die Kindheit.	The spring of life or childhood.
Ist er todt, oder lebendig?	Is he dead, or alive?
Er wollte entweder sein Recht, oder seinen Abschied haben.	He wanted either his right, or his discharge.

§ 77.

I.

The conjunction **und** takes, as a rule, *no* comma before it when it joins two words or two clauses co-ordinate to one another.

Examples.

Hochheit, Ehre, Macht und Reichthum sind eitel.	Greatness, honour, power, and riches are vain.
Ich werde heute nach London reisen und morgen zurückkommen.	I shall go to London to-day, and return to-morrow.

II.

When the conjunction **und** introduces *a new subject and predicate*, we must always place a comma before it; as—

Die Königin wird heute hier eintreffen,
und der König wird morgen kommen.

The queen will arrive to-day,
and the king will come to-morrow.

III.

Rule II does not admit of any exceptions, but Rule I has several exceptions, of which the following are the principal ones:

A. When the conjunction **und** connects two lengthy predicates with one another, we generally place a comma before it to indicate the necessary pause in reading the sentence; as—

Noch oft denke ich mit Vergnügen an
meine Reise in die Schweiz, und
erinnere mich gern an die dort
in so reichem Maße genossenen
Natureindrücke. (Wetzels.)

I still often think with pleasure of
my journey to Switzerland, and
like to recall the impressions
nature so richly produced upon
me there.

B. A comma is likewise placed before **und**, when it joins two predicates standing to one another in the relation of *contrast*, *negation*, and *causality*; as—

Er konnte herrschen, und wollte
[dennoch] dienen.

He was able to rule, and [yet]
would serve.

Arbeite, und spiele nicht.

Work, and do not play!

Er glaubte sich äußerst beleidigt, und
wünschte [daher] gerächt zu werden. (Goethe.)

He fancied he was greatly insulted, and [therefore] wished
to be avenged.

C. When, in the co-ordinate relation, not the subject, but the predicate, or a part of the predicate, is common to both the first and the second clause, the clauses are generally separated by a comma—no matter whether they are connected by **und**, or not—if the part common to both clauses is fully contained in the first one; as—

Die Wahrheit verschwindet aus
dem Gespräche, und Glauben und
Ehre aus dem Leben.

Truth disappears from conversation, and faith and honour
from life.

§ 78. The comma is especially used to introduce an elliptic subordinate clause containing an infinitive preceded by the preposition **zu**, called *Supine* (see § 153 of the Grammar); as—

Ich halte es für meine Pflicht, dir dies zu sagen (<i>instead of daß ich dir dies sage</i>).	I consider it my duty to tell you this.
Der Arzt erlaubte dem Kranken nicht, das Zimmer zu verlassen (<i>instead of daß er das Zimmer verlasse</i>).	The doctor did not allow the patient to leave his room.
Was habt ihr denn gethan, um sie zu retten (<i>instead of daß ihr sie habet retten können</i>)? (Schiller.)	What have you done to save her?

In cases, however, where the infinitive with *zu* cannot be considered to be an *elliptic subordinate clause*, but where it is merely a necessary complement of the predicate, no comma should be used; as—

Er hat nichts zu thun.	He has nothing to do.
Suche zu sein, was du zu scheinen wünschest.	Endeavour to be what you wish to seem.
Er begann zu sprechen.	He began to speak.

§ 79. We generally place a comma before subordinate clauses introduced by the conjunctions **als** and **wie**, except in cases where these particles are used to connect only one single word, or words representing collectively but one idea, with the principal clause.

Examples.

Er handelt, wie sein Gewissen es ihm eingiebt.	He acts as his conscience prompts him.
Die Fürsten sind oft unglücklicher, als die meisten ihrer Unterthanen.	Princes are often more unhappy than the majority of their sub- jects.
Er ist größer als du.	He is taller than you.
Du redest wie ein Kind.	You talk like a child.

(The words „ein Kind“ collectively represent but *one* idea.)

CLARENDON PRESS, OXFORD.

SELECT LIST OF STANDARD WORKS

DICTIONARIES	page 1
LAW	" 2
HISTORY, BIOGRAPHY, ETC.	" 4
PHILOSOPHY, LOGIC, ETC.	" 6
PHYSICAL SCIENCE, ETC.	" 7

1. DICTIONARIES.

A NEW ENGLISH DICTIONARY ON HISTORICAL PRINCIPLES,

Founded mainly on the materials collected by the Philological Society.

Imperial 4to.

EDITED BY DR. MURRAY.

PRESENT STATE OF THE WORK.

PRESENT STATE OF THE WORK.				£	s.	d.
Vol. I.	A, B	By Dr. MURRAY	Half-morocco	2	12	6
Vol. II.	C	By Dr. MURRAY	Half-morocco	2	12	6
Vol. III.	D, E	By Dr. MURRAY and Mr. BRADLEY	Half-morocco	2	12	6
Vol. IV.	F, G	By Mr. BRADLEY	Half-morocco	2	12	6
Vol. V.	H—K	By Dr. MURRAY	Half-morocco	2	12	6
			L-Lap	0	2	6
Vol. VI.	L—N	By Mr. BRADLEY	Lap-Leisurely	0	5	0
			Leisureness-Lief	0	2	6
			Lief-Lock	0	5	0
Vol. VII.	O, P	By Dr. MURRAY	O-Onomastic	0	5	0
			Onomastical-Outing	0	5	0
Vol. VIII.	Q—S	By Mr. CRAIGIE	Q	0	2	6
			R-Reactive	0	5	0

The remainder of the work is in active preparation.

Vols. IX, X will contain S—Z with some supplemental matter.

Orders can be given through any bookseller for the delivery of the remainder of the work in complete *Volumes* or in *Half-volumes* or in *Sections* or in *Parts*.

HALF-VOLUMES. The price of half-volumes, bound, with straight-grained persian leather back, cloth sides, gilt top, is £1 7s. 6d. each, or £13 15s. for the ten now ready, namely, A, B, C—Comm., Comm.—Czech, D, E, F, G, H, I—K.

SECTIONS. A single Section of 64 pages at 2s. 6d. or a double Section of 128 pages at 5s. is issued quarterly.

PARTS. A Part (which is generally the equivalent of five single Sections and is priced at 12s. 6d.) is issued whenever ready.

Nearly all the Parts and Sections in which Volumes I—V were first issued are still obtainable in the original covers.

FORTHCOMING ISSUE, OCTOBER 1, 1903. A portion of Vol. VI. By Mr. BRADLEY.

Oxford: Clarendon Press. London: HENRY FROWDE, Amen Corner, E.C.

- A Hebrew and English Lexicon of the Old Testament**, with an Appendix containing the Biblical Aramaic, based on the Thesaurus and Lexicon of Gesenius, by Francis Brown, D.D., S. R. Driver, D.D., and C. A. Briggs, D.D. Parts I-X. Small 4to, 2s. 6d. each.
- Thesaurus Syriacus**: collegerunt Quatremère, Bernstein, Lorsbach, Arnoldi, Agrell, Field, Roediger: edidit R. Payne Smith, S.T.P.
Vol. I, containing Fasciculi I-V, sm. fol., 5l. 5s.
Vol. II, completing the work, containing Fasciculi VI-X, 8l. 8s.
- A Compendious Syriac Dictionary**, founded upon the above. Edited by Mrs. Margoliouth. Small 4to, complete, 63s. net. Part IV, 15s. net. *Parts I-III can no longer be supplied.*
- A Dictionary of the Dialects of Vernacular Syriac** as spoken by the Eastern Syrians of Kurdistan, North-West Persia, and the Plain of Mosul. By A. J. Maclean, M.A., F.R.G.S. Small 4to, 15s.
- An English-Swahili Dictionary**. By A. C. Madan, M.A. *Second Edition, Revised*. Extra fcap. 8vo, 7s. 6d. net.
- Swahili-English Dictionary**. By A. C. Madan, M.A. [*In the Press*].
- A Sanskrit-English Dictionary**. Etymologically and Philologically arranged, with special reference to cognate Indo-European Languages. By Sir M. Monier-Williams, M.A., K.C.I.E.; with the collaboration of Prof. E. Leumann, Ph.D.; Prof. C. Cappeller, Ph.D.; and other scholars. *New Edition, greatly Enlarged and Improved*. Cloth, bevelled edges, 3l. 13s. 6d.; half-morocco, 4l. 4s.
- A Greek-English Lexicon**. By H. G. Liddell, D.D., and Robert Scott, D.D. *Eighth Edition, Revised*. 4to. 1l. 16s.
- An Etymological Dictionary of the English Language**, arranged on an Historical Basis. By W. W. Skeat, Litt.D. *Third Edition*. 4to. 2l. 4s.
- A Middle-English Dictionary**. By F. H. Stratmann. A new edition, by H. Bradley, M.A. 4to, half-morocco. 1l. 11s. 6d.
- The Student's Dictionary of Anglo-Saxon**. By H. Sweet, M.A., Ph.D., LL.D. Small 4to. 8s. 6d. net.
- An Anglo-Saxon Dictionary**, based on the MS. collections of the late Joseph Bosworth, D.D. Edited and enlarged by Prof. T. N. Toller, M.A. Parts I-III. A-SAR. 4to, stiff covers, 15s. each. Part IV, § 1, SAR-SWIDRIAN. Stiff covers, 8s. 6d. Part IV, § 2, SWIP-SNEL-YTMEST, 18s. 6d.
- An Icelandic-English Dictionary**, based on the MS. collections of the late Richard Cleasby. Enlarged and completed by G. Vigfússon, M.A. 4to. 3l. 7s.

2. LAW.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>Anson. Principles of the English Law of Contract, and of Agency in its Relation to Contract. By Sir W. R. Anson, D.C.L. <i>Tenth Edition</i>. 8vo. 10s. 6d.</p> | <p>Anson. Law and Custom of the Constitution. 2 vols. 8vo.
Part I. Parliament. <i>Third Edition</i>. 12s. 6d.
Part II. The Crown. <i>Second Ed.</i> 14s.</p> |
|---|---|

Bryce. *Studies in History and Jurisprudence.* 2 Vols. 8vo. By the Right Hon. J. Bryce, M.P. 25s. net.

Digby. *An Introduction to the History of the Law of Real Property.* By Sir Kenelm E. Digby, M.A. Fifth Edition. 8vo. 12s. 6d.

Grueber. *Lex Aquilia.* By Erwin Grueber, Dr. Jur., M.A. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

Hall. *International Law.* By W. E. Hall, M.A. Fourth Edition. 8vo. 22s. 6d.

— *A Treatise on the Foreign Powers and Jurisdiction of the British Crown.* By W. E. Hall, M.A. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

Holland. *Elements of Jurisprudence.* By T. E. Holland, D.C.L. Ninth Edition. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

— *Studies in International Law.* By T. E. Holland, D.C.L. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

— *Gentilis, Alberici, De Iure Belli Libri Tres.* Edited by T. E. Holland, I.C.D. Small 4to, half-morocco. 21s.

— *The Institutes of Justinian*, edited as a recension of the Institutes of Gaius, by T. E. Holland, D.C.L. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 5s.

Holland and Shadwell. *Select Titles from the Digest of Justinian.* By T. E. Holland, D.C.L., and C. L. Shadwell, D.C.L. 8vo. 14s.

Also sold in Parts, in paper covers—

Part I. Introductory Titles. 2s. 6d.

Part II. Family Law. 1s.

Part III. Property Law. 2s. 6d.

Part IV. Law of Obligations (No. 1), 3s. 6d. (No. 2), 4s. 6d.

Ilbert. *The Government of India.* Being a Digest of the Statute Law relating thereto. With Historical Introduction and

Illustrative Documents. By Sir Courtenay Ilbert, K.C.S.I. 8vo, half-roan. 21s.

Ilbert. *Legislative Forms and Methods.* 8vo, half-roan. 16s.

Jenks. *Modern Land Law.* By Edward Jenks, M.A. 8vo. 15s.

Jenkyns. *British Rule and Jurisdiction beyond the Seas.* By the late Sir Henry Jenkyns, K.C.B. With a Preface by Sir Courtenay Ilbert, K.C.S.I. 8vo, half-roan. 16s. net.

Markby. *Elements of Law considered with reference to Principles of General Jurisprudence.* By Sir William Markby, D.C.L. Fifth Edition. 8vo. 12s. 6d.

Moyle. *Imperatoris Iustiniani Institutionum Libri Quattuor*, with Introductions, Commentary, Excursus and Translation. By J. B. Moyle, D.C.L. Third Edition. 2 vols. 8vo. Vol. I. 16s. Vol. II. 6s.

— *Contract of Sale in the Civil Law.* 8vo. 10s. 6d.

Pollock and Wright. *An Essay on Possession in the Common Law.* By Sir F. Pollock, Bart., M.A., and Sir R. S. Wright, B.C.L. 8vo. 8s. 6d.

Poste. *Gaii Institutionum Juris Civilis Commentarii Quattuor*; or, Elements of Roman Law by Gaius. With a Translation and Commentary by Edward Poste, M.A. Third Edition. 8vo. 18s.

Sohm. *The Institutes.* A Text-book of the History and System of Roman Private Law. By Rudolph Sohm. Translated by J. C. Ledlie, B.C.L. With an Introduction by Erwin Grueber, Dr. Jur., M.A. Second Edition, revised and enlarged. 8vo. 18s.

Stokes. *The Anglo-Indian Codes.* By Whitley Stokes, LL.D. Vol. I. Substantive Law. 8vo. 30s. Vol. II. Adjective Law. 8vo. 35s. First and Second Supplements to the above, 1887-1891. 8vo. 6s. 6d. Separately, No. 1, 2s. 6d.; No. 2, 4s. 6d.

3. HISTORY, BIOGRAPHY, ETC.

- Aubrey.** *'Brief Lives,' chiefly of Contemporaries, set down by John Aubrey, between the Years 1669 and 1696.* Edited from the Author's MSS., by Andrew Clark, M.A., LL.D. With Facsimiles. 2 vols. 8vo. 25s.
- Barnard.** *Companion to English History (Middle Ages).* With 97 Illustrations. By F. P. Barnard, M.A. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d. net.
- Boswell's Life of Samuel Johnson,** LL.D. Edited by G. Birkbeck Hill, D.C.L. In six volumes, medium 8vo. With Portraits and Facsimiles. Half-bound. 3l. 3s.
- Bright.** *Chapters of Early English Church History.* By W. Bright, D.D. Third Edition. Revised and Enlarged. With a Map. 8vo. 12s.
- Bryce.** *Studies in History and Jurisprudence.* By the Right Hon. J. Bryce, M.P. 2 vols. 8vo. 25s. net.
- Butler.** *The Arab Conquest of Egypt and the last thirty years of the Roman Dominion.* By A. J. Butler, D.Litt., F.S.A. With Maps and Plans. 8vo. 16s. net.
- Casaubon (Isaac), 1559-1614.** By Mark Pattison. 8vo. 16s.
- Chambers.** *The Mediaeval Stage.* By E. K. Chambers. With two illustrations. 2 vols. 8vo. 25s. net.
- Clarendon's History of the Rebellion and Civil Wars in England.** Re-edited from a fresh collation of the original MS. in the Bodleian Library, with marginal dates and occasional notes, by W. Dunn Macray, M.A., F.S.A. 6 vols. Crown 8vo. 2l. 5s.
- Earle.** *Handbook to the Land-Charters, and other Saxon Documents.* By John Earle, M.A. Crown 8vo. 16s.
- *The Alfred Jewel: An Historical Essay.* With Illustrations and Map. Small 4to, buckram. 12s. 6d. net.
- Earle and Plummer.** *Two of the Saxon Chronicles, Parallel, with Supplementary Extracts from the others.* A Revised Text, edited, with Introduction, Notes, Appendices, and Glossary, by Charles Plummer, M.A., on the basis of an edition by John Earle, M.A. 2 vols. Crown 8vo, half-roan.
- Vol. I. Text, Appendices, and Glossary. 10s. 6d.
- Vol. II. Introduction, Notes, and Index. 12s. 6d.
- Fisher.** *Studies in Napoleonic Statesmanship.—Germany.* By H. A. L. Fisher, M.A. With four Maps. 8vo. 12s. 6d. net.
- Freeman.** *The History of Sicily from the Earliest Times.* Vols. I and II. 8vo, cloth. 2l. 2s.
- Vol. III. The Athenian and Carthaginian Invasions. 24s.
- Vol. IV. From the Tyranny of Dionysios to the Death of Agathoklès. Edited by Arthur J. Evans, M.A. 21s.
- Freeman.** *The Reign of William Rufus and the Accession of Henry the First.* By E. A. Freeman, D.C.L. 2 vols. 8vo. 1l. 16s.
- Gardiner.** *The Constitutional Documents of the Puritan Revolution, 1628-1660.* By S. R. Gardiner, D.C.L. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.
- Gross.** *The Gild Merchant; a Contribution to British Municipal History.* By Charles Gross, Ph.D. 2 vols. 8vo. 24s.
- Hill.** *Sources for Greek History between the Persian and Peloponnesian Wars.* Collected and arranged by G. F. Hill, M.A. 8vo. 10s. 6d.
- Hodgkin.** *Italy and her Invaders.* With Plates & Maps, 8 vols. 8vo. By T. Hodgkin, D.C.L.
- Vols. I-II. Second Edition. 42s.
- Vols. III-IV. Second Edition. 36s.
- Vols. V-VI. 36s.
- Vol. VII-VIII (completing the work). 24s.

- Johnson.** *Letters of Samuel Johnson*, LL.D. Collected and Edited by G. Birkbeck Hill, D.C.L. 2 vols. half-roan. 28s.
- *Johnsonian Miscellanies*. 2 vols. Medium 8vo, half-roan. 28s.
- Kitchin.** *A History of France*. By G. W. Kitchin, D.D. In three Volumes. Crown 8vo, each 10s. 6d.
Vol. I. to 1453. Vol. II. 1453-1624. Vol. III. 1624-1793.
- Kyd.** *The Works of Thomas Kyd*. Edited from the original Texts, with Introduction, Notes, and Facsimiles. By F. S. Boas, M.A. 8vo. 15s. net.
- Le Strange.** *Baghdad during the Abbasid Caliphate*. By G. Le Strange. 8vo. 16s. net.
- Lewis (Sir G. Cornwall).** *An Essay on the Government of Dependencies*. Edited by C. P. Lucas, B.A. 8vo, half-roan. 14s.
- Lucas.** *Historical Geography of the British Colonies*. By C. P. Lucas, B.A. With Maps. Cr. 8vo.
Vol. I. The Mediterranean and Eastern Colonies (exclusive of India). 5s.
Vol. II. The West Indian Colonies. 7s. 6d.
Vol. III. West Africa. *Second Edition*, revised to the end of 1899, by H. E. Egerton. 7s. 6d.
Vol. IV. South and East Africa. Historical and Geographical. 9s. 6d.
Also Vol. IV in two Parts—
Part I. Historical, 6s. 6d.
Part II. Geographical, 3s. 6d.
Vol. V. The History of Canada (Part I, New France). 6s.
- Ludlow.** *The Memoirs of Edmund Ludlow, Lieutenant-General of the Horse in the Army of the Commonwealth of England, 1625-1672*. Edited by C. H. Firth, M.A. 2 vols. 36s.
- Lyly.** *The Works of John Lyly*. Collected and edited, with facsimiles, by R. W. Bond, M.A. In 3 vols. 8vo, uniform with *Kyd*. 42s. net.
- Machiavelli.** *Il Principe*. Edited by L. Arthur Burd, M.A. With an Introduction by Lord Acton. 8vo. 14s.
- Merriman.** *Life and Letters of Thomas Cromwell*. With a Portrait and Facsimile. By R. B. Merriman, B. Litt. 2 vols. 8vo. 18s. net.
- Morris.** *The Welsh Wars of Edward I.* With a Map. By J. E. Morris, M.A. 8vo. 9s. 6d. net.
- Oman.** *A History of the Peninsular War*. 6 vols. 8vo. With Maps, Plans, and Portraits. By C. Oman, M.A. Vol. I (1807-1809). 14s. net. Vol. II (from the Battle of Corunna to the end of the Talavera Campaign). 14s. net.
- Payne.** *History of the New World called America*. By E. J. Payne, M.A. 8vo.
Vol. I, containing *The Discovery and Aboriginal America*, 18s.
Vol. II, *Aboriginal America* (concluded), 14s.
- Plummer.** *The Life and Times of Alfred the Great*. Being 1901 Ford Lectures. By Charles Plummer, M.A. Crown 8vo. 5s. net.
- Poole.** *Historical Atlas of Modern Europe from the decline of the Roman Empire*. Edited by R. L. Poole, M.A. 5l. 15s. 6d. net. Each Map can now be bought separately for 1s. 6d. net.
- Prothero.** *Select Statutes and other Constitutional Documents, illustrative of the Reigns of Elizabeth and James I.* Edited by G. W. Prothero, M.A. Cr. 8vo. *Edition 2*. 10s. 6d.
- Ramsay (Sir J. H.).** *Lancaster and York*. (A.D. 1399-1485). 2 vols. 8vo. With Index. 37s. 6d.
- Ramsay (W. M.).** *The Cities and Bishoprics of Phrygia*.
Vol. I. Part I. The Lycos Valley and South-Western Phrygia. Royal 8vo. 18s. net.
Vol. I. Part II. West and West-Central Phrygia. 21s. net.

- Ranke.** *A History of England, principally in the Seventeenth Century.* By L. von Ranke. Translated under the superintendence of G. W. Kitchin, D.D., and C. W. Boase, M.A. 6 vols. 8vo. 63s. Revised Index, separately, 1s.
- Rashdall.** *The Universities of Europe in the Middle Ages.* By Hastings Rashdall, M.A. 2 vols. (in 3 Parts) 8vo. With Maps. 2l. 5s. net.
- Rhys.** *Studies in the Arthurian Legend.* By John Rhys, M.A. 8vo. 12s. 6d.
- *Celtic Folklore: Welsh and Manx.* By the same. 2 vols. 8vo. 21s.
- Rogers.** *History of Agriculture and Prices in England, A.D. 1259–1793.* By J. E. Thorold Rogers, M.A. 8vo.
Vols. I, II (1259–1400), 42s.
Vols. III, IV (1401–1582), 50s.
Vols. V, VI (1583–1702), 50s.
Vol. VII, 2 Parts (1703–1793).
By A. G. Rogers, M.A. 50s.
- Sanday.** *Sacred Sites of the Gospels.* By W. Sanday, D.D. With many illustrations, including drawings of the Temple by Paul Waterhouse. 8vo. 13s. 6d. net.
- Scaccario.** *De Necessariis Observantiis Scaccarii Dialogus.* Commonly called *Dialogus de Scaccario.*
- By Richard, Son of Nigel, Treasurer of England and Bishop of London. Edited by Arthur Hughes, C. G. Crump, and C. Johnson. 8vo, 12s. 6d. net.
- Smith's Lectures on Justice, Police, Revenue and Arms.** Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by Edwin Cannan. 8vo. 10s. 6d. net.
- *Wealth of Nations.* With Notes, by J. E. Thorold Rogers, M.A. 2 vols. 8vo. 21s.
- Stubbs.** *Select Charters and other Illustrations of English Constitutional History, from the Earliest Times to the Reign of Edward I.* Arranged and edited by W. Stubbs, D.D. Eighth Edition. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.
- *The Constitutional History of England, in its Origin and Development.* Library Edition. 3 vols. Demy 8vo. 2l. 8s.
Also in 3 vols. crown 8vo. 12s. each.
- *Seventeen Lectures on the Study of Mediaeval and Modern History and kindred subjects.* Crown 8vo. Third Edition. 8s. 6d.
- *Registrum Sacrum Anglicanum.* Sm. 4to. Ed. 2. 10s. 6d.
- Vinogradoff.** *Villainage in England.* Essays in English Mediaeval History. By Paul Vinogradoff. 8vo, half-bound. 16s.

4. PHILOSOPHY, LOGIC, ETC.

- Bacon.** *Novum Organum.* Edited, with Introduction, Notes, &c., by T. Fowler, D.D. Second Edition. 8vo. 15s.
- Berkeley.** *The Works of George Berkeley, D.D., formerly Bishop of Cloyne; including many of his writings hitherto unpublished.* With Prefaces, Annotations, Appendices, and an Account of his Life, by A. Campbell Fraser, Hon. D.C.L., LL.D. New Edition in 4 vols., cr. 8vo. 24s.
- *The Life and Letters, with an account of his Philosophy.* By A. Campbell Fraser. 8vo. 16s.
- Bosanquet.** *Logic; or, the Morphology of Knowledge.* By B. Bosanquet, M.A. 8vo. 21s.
- Butler.** *The Works of Joseph Butler, D.C.L., sometime Lord Bishop of Durham.* Edited by the Right Hon. W. E. Gladstone. 2 vols. Medium 8vo. 14s. each.
- Campagnac.** *The Cambridge Platonists: being Selections from the writings of Benjamin Whichcote, John Smith, and Nathanael Culverwel, with Introduction by E. T. Campagnac, M.A.* Cr. 8vo. 6s. 6d. net.

- Fowler.** *Logic; Deductive and Inductive*, combined in a single volume. Extra fcap. 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- Fowler and Wilson.** *The Principles of Morals.* By T. Fowler, D.D., and J. M. Wilson, B.D. 8vo, cloth. 14s.
- Green.** *Prolegomena to Ethics.* By T. H. Green, M.A. Edited by A. C. Bradley, M.A. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- Hegel.** *The Logic of Hegel.* Translated from the Encyclopaedia of the Philosophical Sciences. With Prolegomena to the Study of Hegel's Logic and Philosophy. By W. Wallace, M.A. Second Edition, Revised and Augmented. 2 vols. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d. each.
- Hegel's Philosophy of Mind.** Translated from the Encyclopaedia of the Philosophical Sciences. With Five Introductory Essays. By William Wallace, M.A., LL.D. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.
- Hume's Treatise of Human Nature.** Edited, with Analytical Index, by L. A. Selby-Bigge, M.A. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s. net.
- *Enquiry concerning the Human Understanding.* Edited by L. A. Selby-Bigge, M.A. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s. net.
- Leibniz.** *The Monadology and other Philosophical Writings.* Translated, with Introduction and Notes, by Robert Latta, M.A., D.Phil. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.
- Locke.** *An Essay Concerning Human Understanding.* By John Locke. Collated and Annotated by A. Campbell Fraser, Hon. D.C.L., LL.D. 2 vols. 8vo. 11. 12s.
- Lotze's Logic, in Three Books** — of Thought, of Investigation, and of Knowledge. English Translation; edited by B. Bosanquet, M.A. Second Edition. 2 vols. Cr. 8vo. 12s.
- *Metaphysic, in Three Books* — Ontology, Cosmology, and Psychology. English Translation; edited by B. Bosanquet, M.A. Second Edition. 2 vols. Cr. 8vo. 12s.
- Martineau.** *Types of Ethical Theory.* By James Martineau, D.D. Third Edition. 2 vols. Cr. 8vo. 15s.
- *A Study of Religion: its Sources and Contents.* Second Edition. 2 vols. Cr. 8vo. 15s.
- Selby-Bigge.** *British Moralists.* Selections from Writers principally of the Eighteenth Century. Edited by L. A. Selby-Bigge, M.A. 2 vols. Crown 8vo. 12s. net, uniform with Hume's *Treatise and Enquiry* and the 4 vol. crown 8vo edition of Berkeley.
- Spinoza.** *A Study in the Ethics of Spinoza.* By Harold H. Joachim. 8vo. 10s. 6d. net.
- Wallace.** *Lectures and Essays on Natural Theology and Ethics.* By William Wallace, M.A., LL.D. Edited, with a Biographical Introduction, by Edward Caird, M.A. 8vo, with a Portrait. 12s. 6d.

5. PHYSICAL SCIENCE, ETC.

- Balfour.** *The Natural History of the Musical Bow.* A Chapter in the Developmental History of Stringed Instruments of Music. Part I, Primitive Types. By Henry Balfour, M.A. Royal 8vo, paper covers. 4s. 6d.
- Chambers.** *A Handbook of Descriptive and Practical Astronomy.* By G. F. Chambers, F.R.A.S. Fourth Edition, in 3 vols. Demy 8vo.
- Vol. I. The Sun, Planets, and Comets. 21s.
- Vol. II. Instruments and Practical Astronomy. 21s.
- Vol. III. The Starry Heavens. 14s.

De Bary. *Comparative Anatomy of the Vegetative Organs of the Phanerogams and Ferns.* By Dr. A. de Bary. Translated by F. O. Bower, M.A., and D. H. Scott, M.A. Royal 8vo. 22s. 6d.

— *Comparative Morphology and Biology of Fungi, Mycetozoa and Bacteria.* By Dr. A. de Bary. Translated by H. E. F. Garnsey, M.A. Revised by Isaac Bayley Balfour, M.A., M.D., F.R.S. Royal 8vo, half-morocco. 22s. 6d.

— *Lectures on Bacteria.* By Dr. A. de Bary. Second Improved Edition. Translated and revised by the same. Crown 8vo. 6s.

Ewart. *On the Physics and Physiology of Protoplasmic Streaming in Plants.* By A. J. Ewart, D.Sc., Ph.D., F.L.S. With seventeen illustrations. Royal 8vo. 8s. 6d. net.

Fischer. *The Structure and Functions of Bacteria.* By Alfred Fischer. Translated into English by A. Coppen Jones. Royal 8vo, with Twenty-nine Woodcuts. 8s. 6d.

Goebel. *Outlines of Classification and Special Morphology of Plants.* By Dr. K. Goebel. Translated by H. E. F. Garnsey, M.A. Revised by Isaac Bayley Balfour, M.A., M.D., F.R.S. Royal 8vo, half-morocco. 21s.

— *Organography of Plants, especially of the Archegoniatae and Spermatophyta.* By Dr. K. Goebel. Authorized English Edition, by Isaac Bayley Balfour, M.A., M.D., F.R.S. Part I, General Organography. Royal 8vo, half-morocco. 12s. 6d.

[Part II in the Press.]

Miall and Hammond. *The Structure and Life-History of the Harlequin Fly (Chironomus).* By L. C.

Miall, F.R.S., and A. R. Hammond, F.L.S. 8vo. With 130 Illustrations. 7s. 6d.

Pfeffer. *The Physiology of Plants. A Treatise upon the Metabolism and Sources of Energy in Plants.* By Prof. Dr. W. Pfeffer. Second fully Revised Edition, translated and edited by Alfred J. Ewart, D.Sc., Ph.D., F.L.S. Part I. Royal 8vo, half-morocco. 28s.

[Part II in the Press.]

Prestwich. *Geology—Chemical, Physical, and Stratigraphical.* By Sir Joseph Prestwich, M.A., F.R.S. In two Volumes. Royal 8vo. 61s.

Sachs. *A History of Botany.* Translated by H. E. F. Garnsey, M.A. Revised by I. Bayley Balfour, M.A., M.D., F.R.S. Crown 8vo. 10s.

Solms-Laubach. *Fossil Botany. Being an Introduction to Palaeophytology from the Standpoint of the Botanist.* By H. Graf zu Solms-Laubach. Translated and revised by the same. Royal 8vo, half-morocco, 18s.

OXFORD HISTORY OF MUSIC.

Edited by W. H. Hadow, M.A.
The Polyphonic Period. Part I (Method of Musical Art, 330–1330). By H. E. Wooldridge, M.A. 8vo. 15s. net.

The Seventeenth Century. By Sir C. Hubert H. Parry, M.A., D.Mus. 15s. net.

The Age of Bach and Handel. By J. A. Fuller Maitland, M.A. 15s. net.

IN PREPARATION.

The Polyphonic Period. Part II. By H. E. Wooldridge, M.A.

The Viennese School. By W. H. Hadow, M.A.

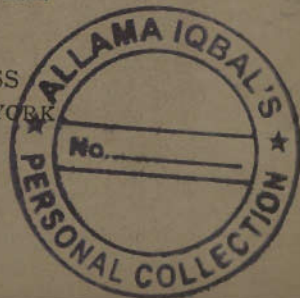
The Romantic Period. By E. Dannreuther, M.A.

OXFORD

AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

LONDON, EDINBURGH, AND NEW YORK

HENRY FROWDE





430

R

L26L

This book was taken from the Library on
the date last stamped. A fine of one
anna will be charged for each day the
book is kept overtime.

M.A. SECTION

16456

13881

ISLAMIA
COLLEGE
LIBRARY,
LAHORE.

Extract from the Rules:—

Books are issued for
fourteen days only.

A fine of one anna
per day will be charged
for each volume kept
over time.

Borrowers will be held
responsible for any
damage done to
books while in
their possession.

